

# Infor System21 Cash Management

Product Guide

### Copyright © 2021 Infor

### **Important Notices**

The material contained in this publication (including any supplementary information) constitutes and contains confidential and proprietary information of Infor.

By gaining access to the attached, you acknowledge and agree that the material (including any modification, translation or adaptation of the material) and all copyright, trade secrets and all other right, title and interest therein, are the sole property of Infor and that you shall not gain right, title or interest in the material (including any modification, translation or adaptation of the material) by virtue of your review thereof other than the non-exclusive right to use the material solely in connection with and the furtherance of your license and use of software made available to your company from Infor pursuant to a separate agreement, the terms of which separate agreement shall govern your use of this material and all supplemental related materials ("Purpose").

In addition, by accessing the enclosed material, you acknowledge and agree that you are required to maintain such material in strict confidence and that your use of such material is limited to the Purpose described above. Although Infor has taken due care to ensure that the material included in this publication is accurate and complete, Infor cannot warrant that the information contained in this publication is complete, does not contain typographical or other errors, or will meet your specific requirements. As such, Infor does not assume and hereby disclaims all liability, consequential or otherwise, for any loss or damage to any person or entity which is caused by or relates to errors or omissions in this publication (including any supplementary information), whether such errors or omissions result from negligence, accident or any other cause.

Without limitation, U.S. export controllaws and other applicable export and import laws govern your use of this material and you will neither export or re-export, directly or indirectly, this material nor any related materials or supplemental information in violation of such laws, or use such materials for any purpose prohibited by such laws.

### **Trademark Acknowledgements**

The word and design marks set forth herein are trademarks and/or registered trademarks of Infor and/or related affiliates and subsidiaries. All rights reserved. All other company, product, trade or service names referenced may be registered trademarks or trademarks of their respective owners.

**Publication Information** 

Release: Infor System21 3.2

Publication date: December 1, 2021

Document code: CS

# Contents

About this guide	15
Intended audience	15
Related documents	15
Contacting Infor	15
Chapter 1 Overview	17
The Cash Management Application	17
The Cash Management Application Environment	18
Multi-national Accounting	19
Multi-company Accounting Environment	19
Links to Other Applications	21
Standard Interface	21
Preparing to use Cash Management	22
Entering Basic Data	22
Chapter 2 Maintenance	23
Maintenance	23
Cash Management Maintenance Functions	23
Maintain CS Company Profile [4/ASCO]	
Maintain Cash Management Company Selection Window	24
Maintain Cash Management Company Profile Window	24
Maintain Company Profile Collection Documents Window	27
Print CS Company Profile [14/ASCO]	30
Report Company Profile Selection Window	30
Maintain Bank Accounts [1/CSM]	30
Maintain Bank Accounts Selection Window	30
Maintain Bank Accounts Window	31
Maintain Bank Accounts Detail Window	33
Bank Detail Maintenance Pop-up - Bank Detail	34

Bank Detail Maintenance Pop-up - IBAN Details	35
Maintain Bank Names and Addresses [2/CSM]	35
Maintain Bank Name and Address Selection Window	36
Maintain Bank Name and Address Window	36
Maintain Parameters [3/CSM]	37
Parameter File Maintenance Selection Window	37
Parameter File Maintenance Sub-Types Window	38
CS Parameters Types List	39
Maintain Period End Calendar [4/CSM]	45
Maintain Calendar File Selection Window	45
Maintain Calendar File Window	45
Maintain Sundry Creditors [5/CSM]	45
Maintain Miscellaneous Creditors Selection Window	46
Maintain Miscellaneous Creditors Window	46
Miscellaneous Creditors Bank Details Pop-up	47
Maintain Extended Terms [6/CSM]	48
Maintain Extended Terms Selection Window	48
Maintain Extended Terms Window	49
Maintain Extended Terms with Range	51
Maintain Payment Methods [7/CSM]	52
Payment Method Maintenance Selection Window	52
Payment Method Maintenance Window	52
Card Validation Requirements Pop-up	56
Maintain Cash Apportionment Table [8/CSM]	57
Maintain Cash Apportionment Table Selection Window	57
Maintain Cash Apportionment Table Window	57
Maintain External Bank Details [9/CSM]	58
External Bank Account Maintenance Window	58
External Bank Account Maintenance List Window	59
Payment Method and Currency Pop-up	59
Maintain Interest & Commission Charges [10/CSM]	60
Interest and Commission Charges Initial Window	60
Maintain Interest and Commission Charges Window	61
Cheque Sequences [11/CSM]	62
Cheque Sequence Initial Window	
Maintain Cheque Sequence Details Window	62

Omitted Cheques [12/CSM]	63
Omitted Cheques Maintenance Window	63
Maintain Discount Codes [13/CSM]	64
Maintain Settlement Discount Codes Selection Window	64
Maintain Settlement Discount Codes Window	64
Maintain CS Standard Distributions [14/CSM]	65
Maintain CS Standard Distributions window	
Maintain CS Standard Distribution Details Window	
Report on Bank Accounts [31/CSM]	68
Report on Bank Names & Addresses [32/CSM]	68
Report on Parameters [33/CSM]	68
Report on Period End Calendar [34/CSM]	68
Report on Sundry Creditors [35/CSM]	69
Report on Extended Terms [36/CSM]	69
Report on Payment Methods [37/CSM]	69
Report on Cash Apportionment Table [38/CSM]	69
Report on External Bank Details [39/CSM]	70
External Bank Details Listing Window	70
Report on Interest & Commission Charges [40/CSM]	70
Cheque Register [41/CSM]	70
Cheque Register Selection Window	70
Chapter 3 Processing	73
Cash Postings in other Applications	73
Cash Postings within Cash Management	73
Opening Balances	74
Supplier Payments [1/CSP]	
Release Supplier Payments Window	
Release Outstanding Supplier Payments Window	
Override Default Posting Period Pop Up Enter Supplier Reference	
Supplier Receipts [2/CSP]	
Supplier Receipts Window	
Value Date Entry Pop-up	
Override Conversion Parameters Pop-up	

Miscellaneous Payments [11/CSP]	81
Miscellaneous Payments Payee Window	81
Miscellaneous Payments Value Window	82
Miscellaneous Payments Item Window	83
Journal Payments [12/CSP]	85
Journal Payments Payee Window	85
Journal Payments Dissections Window	87
Journal Receipts [13/CSP]	89
Journal Receipts Window	89
Journal Receipts Dissections Window	91
Bank to Bank Transfers [14/CSP]	93
Bank to Bank Transfer Window	
Post from Suspense [15/CSP]	95
Post from Suspense Selection Window	
Post from Suspense Window	
Post from Accounts Window	96
Process External Receipts [24/CSP]	97
Auto Cash Posting Window	
Payments and Remittances [31/CSP]	98
Payment Documentation Window	
Confirm Cheque Numbers [32/CSP]	99
Allocate Cheque Numbers Option Window	
Allocate Cheque Numbers Bank Account Window	
Allocate Cheque Numbers Window	99
Review/Cancel Unpaid Items [41/CSP]	100
Review/Cancel Unpaid Items Selection Window	
Review/Cancel Unpaid Items Window	100
Cancel Transactions [42/CSP]	101
Cancel Cash Item Selection Window	101
Cancel Cash Item Window	102
Cancellation Details Pop Up	102
Cancel Cheques Window	103
Cancel Payments Window	103
Deallocate Payments Window	104
Cancel payment run [43/CSP]	104
Select Payment Run for Cancellation Window	104

	List Payments for Cancellation Window	104
	Cancellation Details Pop-up	105
	Confirm Cancellation Pop-up	105
	Bank Statement Reconciliation [51/CSP]	106
	Reconcile Bank Statements Account Window	106
	Reconcile Bank Statements Item Window	107
	Bank Statement Posting [52/CSP]	108
	Bank Statement Posting Account Window	109
	Bank Statement Posting Line Window	
	Cash Management Posting	111
	Bank Statement Posting CS Item Window	111
	Bank Statement Posting GL Dissections Window	114
	Making an Accounts Receivable Posting	115
	Bank Statement Posting AR Item Window	116
	Bank Statement Posting AR Selection Window	118
	Select Item Discount Pop-up	119
	Bank Statement Posting (Adjustments) Window	120
	Making an Accounts Payable Posting	121
	Bank Statement Posting AP Item Window	121
	Bank Statement Posting AP Selection Window	124
	AR Interface Posting [53/CSP]	125
	AR Interface Posting Initial Window	125
	AR Interface Posting Selection Window	126
	AR Interface Posting Detail Window	126
	AR Interface Posting Invoice Entry Window	127
	AR Interface Posting Adjustments Window	128
	Cash Book Period Close [6/CS]	129
	Period End Window	129
	Period End Confirmation Window.	129
Cha	apter 4 Automatic Bank Reconciliation	131
	Automatic Bank Reconciliation Overview	
	Interface Data Transfer [1/CSR]	131
	Bank Interface Data Transfer Window	
	Manual Bank Reconciliation [2/CSR]	
	Manual Bank Reconciliation [2/CSR]	
	Manual Bank Reconciliation Window	
	Manual Dank Reconciliation Selection William	133

Position Lists Pop-up	134
Totals Not Equal Pop-up	134
Mismatch Posting Pop-up	134
Automatic Bank Reconciliation [3/CSR]	135
Automatic Bank Reconciliation Window	135
Maintain Bank Transaction Types [11/CSR]	136
Transaction Types Maintenance Selection Window	136
Transaction Types Maintenance Window	136
Maintain Bank Reference on Cash Item [12/CSR]	137
Item Enquiry Selection Window	137
Item Enquiry Details Window	138
Maintain Bank Reference on Statement [13/CSR]	139
Bank Reference Maintenance Window	139
Bank Reference Maintenance Outstanding Items Window	139
Bank Reference Maintenance Transaction Details Window	140
Report on Statement Match Status [21/CSR]	140
Bank Statements Match Status Report Window	140
Load Data to Transfer File [81/CSR]	141
Statement Delete [82/CSR]	141
Bank Statement Delete Window	
Chapter 5 Collection Documents Processing	143
The Collection Document Cycle	143
Collection Document Sequence Diagram	144
Using Review Codes	146
Automatic Collection Document Creation [1/CSD]	147
Document/Statement Creation Window	
Manual Collection Document Creation [2/CSD]	150
Document Creation Selection Window	150
Document Creation Payment Method Window	150
Document Creation Items Window	151
Maintain Document Details Window	152
Enter AR Items Pop-up	153
Enter Adjustments Pop-up	154
Third Party Pop-up	154
Select Third Party Pop-up	
Third Party Maintenance Header Window	156

Third Party Maintenance Details Window	156
Collection Document Acceptance [3/CSD]	157
Document Acceptance Company Window	158
Document Acceptance Selection Window	160
Maintain Document Details Window	161
Part Acceptance of Document Window	162
Enter Adjustments Pop-up	163
Include AR Items Pop-up	163
Document Replacement Window	163
Replacement Documents Pop-up	164
Document Maintenance Window	165
Add Items to Document Window	166
Collection Document Maintenance [4/CSD]	166
Document Maintenance Company Window	
Document Maintenance Selection Window	
Disputed Items Pop Up	169
Collection Document Review [5/CSD]	170
Document Review Window	
Document Review Details Window	
Payment Document Enquiry Window	
Bank Detail Pop-up	
Amend Review Codes Pop-up	
More Details Pop-up	172
Chapter 6 Document Processing – Banks and Other Tasks	
Session Creation [11/CSD]	
Session Creation Window	173
Review and Amend Session [12/CSD]	175
Session Review and Change Window	175
Session Review and Amend Window	176
Add Document to Session Pop-up	176
Amend Session Charges Pop-up	177
Session Listing [13/CSD]	178
List Session Window	
Send Session to Bank [14/CSD]	178
Send Session Window	
Bank Acceptance [15/CSD]	
Balik Acceptance [13/00D]	170

Bank Acceptance Selection Window	179
Bank Acceptance Window	179
Session Review and Amend Window	179
Maturity [16/CSD]	181
Confirmation [17/CSD]	181
Identify Unpaid Documents [31/CSD]	181
Unpay Documents Selection Window	181
Unpay Documents Window	182
Diary Facility Text Window	183
Diary Facility Text Maintenance Window	184
Confirm Unpayment Pop-up	185
Recharge Invoice Pop-up	186
Confirm Part Unpayment Pop-up	186
Confirm Cancel Pop-up	187
Manage Unpaid Documents [32/CSD]	187
Manage Unpaids Company Selection Window	187
Select Payment Document Window	188
Manage Unpaids Window	188
Document Replacement Pop-up	189
Document Replacement Window	189
Replacement Documents Pop-up	190
Document Write-off Pop-up	191
Direct Debit Creation [33/CSD]	192
Direct Debit Creation Window	192
AP Document Maintenance [34/CSD]	193
AP Document Maintenance Selection Window	193
AP Document Maintenance Window	194
AP Document Clearance [35/CSD]	194
Clear AP Documents Window	
Clear AP Documents List	195
Clear AP Documents Confirmation Window	196
Clear AP Documents Confirmation Details Window	196
Banking Engine Collections Creation [36/CSD]	197
Banking Engine Creation Window	
Electronic Direct Debit Creation [37/CSD]	198
Electronic Direct Debit Creation Window	

Chapter 7 Document Processing – Printing Tasks	201
Print Collection Documents [1/CSDM]	201
Print Statements and Payment Documents Window	201
Reprint Collection Documents [2/CSDM]	203
Payment Document Reprint Window	203
Payment Document Enquiry Window	203
Print Collection Document Letters [3/CSDM]	204
Print Customer Letters Window	204
Cash Collection Letters [4/CSDM]	205
Cash Collection Letters Window	205
Chase Unaccepted Collection Documents [5/CSDM]	206
Chase Unaccepted Documents Window	206
Payment Reminders [6/CSDM]	206
Payment Reminders Window	207
List Collection Documents for Review [7/CSDM]	208
List Documents for Review Window	208
Chapter 8 Enquiries and Reports	209
Transaction, Reference and Account Enquiries	
Enquire by Transaction Type [1/CSE, 11/CSZ]	211
Enquiry by Transaction Type Payments or Receipts Window	
Enquiry by Transaction Type Selection Window	212
Enquiry by Transaction Type Date Ranges Window	212
Enquiry by Transaction Type Details Window	213
Enquire by Cash Reference [2/CSE, 12/CSZ]	213
Item Enquiry Selection Window	213
Enquire by Bank Account [3/CSE, 13/CSZ]	214
Bank Account Enquiry Selection Window	214
Item Enquiry Window	214
Enquire on Collection Document [4/CSE]	215
Payment Document Enquiry Selection Window	215
Select Payment Document Window	
Payment Document Enquiry Window	
More Details Pop-up	217
Enquire by Bank Reference [5/CSE]	
Bank Reference Enquiry Selection Window	218

	Bank Reference Enquiry - Reference Selection WindowBank Reference Enquiry Details Window	
	Report of Transactions by Bank Account [11/CSE]	
	Cash Management by Bank Account Window	
	Report of Transactions by Currency [12/CSE]	
	Currency by Bank Account Window	
	Report of Transactions by Bank Reference [13/CSE]	
	Transaction Scan Report [14/CSE]	
	Scan Report Window	
	Statement of Bank Balances [21/CSE]	
	Statement of Bank Balances Window	
	Report on Collection Documents [41/CSE]	
	Bills Report Window	
	Report on Collection Documents by Due Date [42/CSE]	
	Bills of Exchange Due Report Window	
	Report on Collection Document Cash Flow [43/CSE]	
	Cash Flow Report Window	
	Audit Report of Collection Document Reprints [44/CSE]	228
	Bill Reprint Audit Window	228
	Audit Report of Collection Document Write-Off [45/CSE]	228
	Bill Write Off Audit Window	228
	Payment Prelist [61/CSE]	229
	Payment Prelist Window	229
	Cancelled Payments Report [62/CSE]	230
	Cancelled Payments Report Window	230
Cha	apter 9  Italian Function	231
	Maintain Third Parties [1/CSZ]	231
	Third Party Maintenance Selection Window	
	Third Party Maintenance Details Window	232
	Maintain Value Dates Table [2/CSZ]	233
	Value Date Table Maintenance Selection Window	233
	Value Date Table Maintenance Details Window	234
	Report on Third Parties [31/CSZ]	235
	Report on Value Dates Table [32/CSZ]	235

Chapter 10 Utilities	237
Create Company [1/CSU]	238
Create New Company Window	238
Dependent Companies Pop-up	238
Copy Company Data Selection Window	239
Delete Company [2/CSU]	240
Delete Company Window	240
Maintain Company [3/CSU]	240
Maintain Existing Company Window	240
Maintain Company Data Selection Window	241
Reconcile Balances to Transactions [11/CSU]	242
Reconcile Balances Selection Window	242
Reconcile Balances Bank Selection Window	
Balance Reconciliation Window	242
Reconcile to General Ledger [12/CSU]	243
Reconcile Cash Management to General Ledger Company Window	
Reconcile Cash Management to General Ledger Window	
BSP - Recovery [13/CSU]	244
Recover Interactive Bank Statement Posting Window	244
AR Interface Posting Recovery [14/CSU]	245
AR Interface Posting Recovery Window	245
Re-print Cheques [31/CSU]	245
Re-print Cheques Company Selection Window	
Re-print Cheques Selection Window	
Re-print Cheques AP Company Selection Window	
Re-print Cheques Bank Account Window	
Re-print Cheques Detail Window	
Initialise Bank Balances [32/CSU]	
Enter Bank Account Balances Account Selection Window	
Enter Bank Account Balances Window	
Sundry Creditor Name Scan Rebuild [33/CSU]	
Rebuild Misc. Creditor Name Scan Indexes Window	
Recalculate Discount [34/CSU]	
Recalculation of Available Discount Window	
Rebuild Cash Allocation Data Queue [35/CSU]	250
Delete Redundant Data [36/CSU]	250

	251
Delete Redundant Data Files Selection Window	251
Delete Redundant Data Submission Window	252
Reorganise Files [37/CSU]	253
Reorganise Physical Files Window	253
Historical Reporting [7/CS]	253
Report on Archived Transactions Window	253
Report on Archived Company Transactions Window	254
Chapter 11 Application Interface	257
Set Up Requirements for EDI Financials	257
Receive Payment Advice/Remittance [1/CSAI]	258
Receive Payment Advice/Remittances via EDI Window	258
Receive Lockbox [2/CSAI]	259
Receive Lockboxes via EDI Window	259
Send Payment Advice/Remittance [11/CSAI]	259
Send Payment Advice/Remittances via EDI Window	260
Chapter 12 Audit Control	261
Device the an Deily Marrows and MACOAI	261
Report on Daily Movements [1/CSA]	
Daily Movements Window	
	261
Daily Movements Window	261 262
Daily Movements Window	
Daily Movements Window	
Daily Movements Window.  Audit Report [2/CSA]  Cash Management Audit Window  Report on Suspended Items [3/CSA]	
Daily Movements Window.  Audit Report [2/CSA]  Cash Management Audit Window  Report on Suspended Items [3/CSA]  Suspended Items Window	
Daily Movements Window.  Audit Report [2/CSA]  Cash Management Audit Window.  Report on Suspended Items [3/CSA]  Suspended Items Window.  Report on Unpresented Items [4/CSA].	
Daily Movements Window.  Audit Report [2/CSA]  Cash Management Audit Window.  Report on Suspended Items [3/CSA]  Suspended Items Window.  Report on Unpresented Items [4/CSA]  Print Unpresented Items Window.	
Daily Movements Window.  Audit Report [2/CSA]  Cash Management Audit Window.  Report on Suspended Items [3/CSA]  Suspended Items Window.  Report on Unpresented Items [4/CSA]  Print Unpresented Items Window.  Print Bank Statements [5/CSA]	
Daily Movements Window.  Audit Report [2/CSA]	
Daily Movements Window.  Audit Report [2/CSA]	261 262 262 263 263 263 264 264 265
Daily Movements Window.  Audit Report [2/CSA]	261 262 262 263 263 263 264 264 265 265

## About this guide

The purpose of this document is to describe the functions that can be used within the Cash Management Module.

### Intended audience

The guide is intended for any users of the CS Cash Management business module.

### Related documents

You can find the documents in the product documentation section of the Infor Support Portal, as described in "Contacting Infor" on page 15

## **Contacting Infor**

If you have questions about Infor products, go to Infor Concierge at <a href="https://concierge.infor.com/">https://concierge.infor.com/</a> and create a support incident.

The latest documentation is available from <u>docs.infor.com</u> or from the Infor Support Portal. To access documentation on the Infor Support Portal, select **Search > Browse Documentation**. We recommend that you check this portal <u>periodically</u> for updated documentation.

If you have comments about Infor documentation, contact documentation@infor.com.

# Chapter 1 Overview

## The Cash Management Application

The Cash Management application provides you with control over cash flow. When used with Accounts Payable, Accounts Receivable and General <u>Ledger</u>, it provides powerful cash management features with comprehensive <u>multi-currency</u> processing. It integrates with the other financial applications to provide a total financial management system. The following are some of the main features available to you when you use the Cash Management application:

- Cash Management is completely integrated with the other Financial and Customer Services and Logistics applications.
- Multiple companies are supported.
- The application fully supports processing in multiple currencies.
- Bank accounts are maintained in any prime or local currency.
- Customer and journal receipts and payments are processed.
- Bank-to-bank transfers can be made in any currency.
- Cash can be allocated in the currency of the <u>transaction</u> or in a <u>base currency</u>.
- A wide range of flexible enquiries and reports provide you with easy access to account and <u>transaction</u> details, including single and multiple currency accounts and <u>transactions</u>.
- The application has support for collection documents (bills of exchange).

Credit card processing is supported and has the following flow of events:

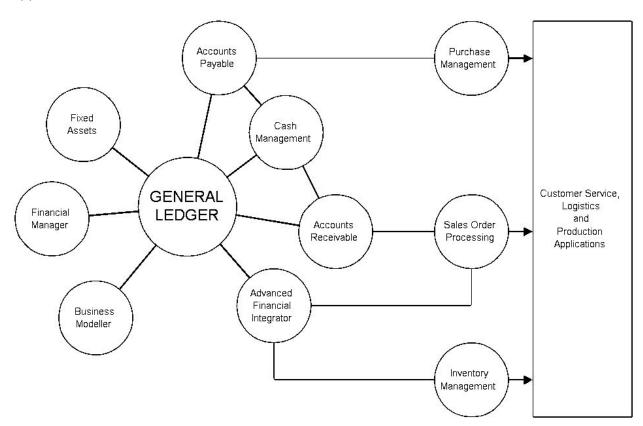
- 1 Identification of an order to be paid by credit card at order entry
- 2 Entry of credit card details at order entry passed to the service provider\* for combined authorisation and settlement request, the order is suspended until authorised.
- 3 On credit card authorisation, cash is posted to the customer account, and as suspended on the bank account, the order is de-suspended.
- 4 On despatch and invoice creation, auto allocation of the invoice to the cash takes place.
- On settlement by the credit card company, or as part of bank reconciliation, the cash is transferred from suspense to bank.

The function includes:

- 1 Credit checking excludes credit card orders from the calculation.
- 2 Invoice prints identify invoices paid by credit card.
- 3 Accounts Receivable allows the clearance of balance/items by credit card.
- 4 Processing for order amendment/cancellation is allowed.
- 5 Refunds on credit cards can be made where returns are made/credit notes issued.

# The Cash Management Application Environment

Broadly addressing all the needs of production, distribution and financial management, the range of applications is illustrated below:



Financial Management is a suite of comprehensive and fully integrated applications, which may be considered as a single financial management tool. It addresses specific business functions (such as debtor management) within a common framework.

At its heart lies the General <u>Ledger</u>, collecting, organising and analysing all your company's financial information, with the processing of invoices and other procedures being supported by the Accounts Payable, Accounts Receivable and Cash Management applications.

This application is designed to present information which is relevant, timely and accurate to support your operational procedures and your executive decisions within a framework which fully conforms to international legal and audit requirements.

### Multi-national Accounting

A company trading only within its own national boundaries may set up a very straightforward set of single-currency <u>ledgers</u>, where all the <u>multi-currency</u> features are hidden.

For the international trading company, on the other hand, the system provides full <u>multi-currency</u> trading and accounting features in all relevant applications. Thus you can process sales and purchase orders in any currency and hold <u>bank accounts</u> in any currency, with each account able to receive cash and make payments in its own or any other defined currency.

Each General <u>Ledger</u> company has a <u>base currency</u>, which is the common currency of all applications linked into it. All financial <u>transactions</u>, in whichever currency they are posted (known as the <u>prime currency</u>), are also expressed in this <u>base currency</u>.

In Cash Management, each <u>bank account</u> has an associated currency. You can post values to the <u>bank account</u> in any valid currency and these values are converted at the time of posting into the <u>bank account</u> currency and into the <u>base currency</u> of the linked General <u>Ledger</u>. You can re-value bank balances at any time to give realised gains and losses.

Finally, you can record <u>ledger transactions</u> in the <u>transaction</u> or <u>prime currency</u> as well as in the <u>base currency</u> of the <u>ledger</u>. Translation procedures provide for the expression of <u>base currency</u> values in another currency, this being used primarily for reporting multi-national company results in a common currency.

Three further features enhance the multi-national capability of the system:

- Language translation provides facilities for translating report text and on-line help text into your own language.
- Tax accounting procedures are designed to meet the accounting and reporting requirements of most taxation authorities (and specifically those of the European Community).
- Application <u>parameters</u> allow you to set up and use only those features appropriate to your needs.

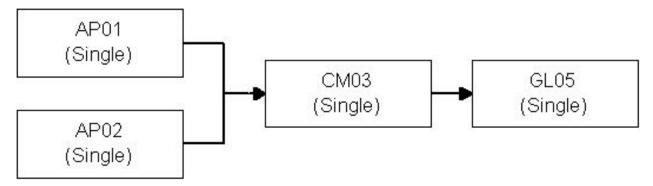
### Multi-company Accounting Environment

Each accounting environment is controlled by its General <u>Ledger</u>. Within each environment, you can have multiple Accounts Payable, Accounts Receivable and Cash Management companies.

You can create two types of environment:

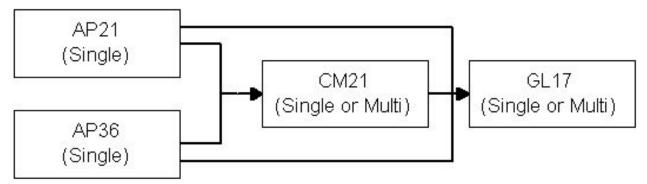
### Simple

This structure meets the complete accounting requirements of a company trading in its own local currency. Single-currency Accounts Payable and Receivable companies link to a single-currency Cash Management application, which in turn links to a single-currency General <u>Ledger</u>.



### Comprehensive

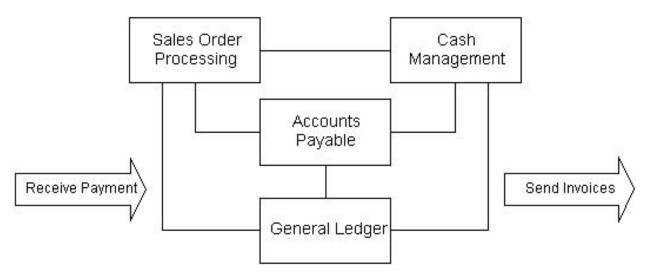
This structure is used where the company has <u>multi-currency</u> suppliers and/or customers. The Payable and Receivable companies and their linked Cash Management company must both link to the same General <u>Ledger</u>.



**Note**: Single-currency and <u>multi-currency</u> Accounts Payable and Accounts Receivable companies can be linked to single-currency or <u>multi-currency</u> Cash Management companies in any combination. The General <u>Ledger</u> company to which they are all linked can itself be single-currency or <u>multi-currency</u>.

# Links to Other Applications

Cash Management is at its most effective when implemented as part of a full suite of applications:



Cash Management is used to process an actual payment either from a customer or to the supplier, once payment has been authorised. Methods of payment include cheques, automatic bank transfers and bills of exchange (now generally referred to as <u>collection documents</u>). <u>Multi-currency</u> payments rely on currency data held by the General <u>Ledger</u>, to which appropriate journals are also posted.

General <u>Ledger</u> is the repository for collecting, organising and analysing all your company's financial information. It also includes <u>multi-currency exchange rates</u> and Tax data used by Cash Management.

### Standard Interface

A standard interface is available from your software supplier if you need to link data from any non-System21 application into General <u>Ledger</u>.

Essentially, it requires the external application to create work files containing the <u>transaction</u>, in the correct format. The interface procedure then validates the <u>transactions</u>, posts them to the General <u>Ledger</u>, and produces an audit report.

Please ask your software supplier for more information about this facility.

# Preparing to use Cash Management

Preparing to use the Cash Management application requires careful planning and preparation. Your existing cash management procedures and data need to be transferred to the application.

### **Entering Basic Data**

You must start by entering the following basic data:

### **Company Profile**

This is a record containing control and <u>parameter</u> information for the operation of your company within the application.

### **Bank Accounts**

Every <u>bank account</u> used within the application must have its type, interest rate, <u>currency code</u> etc. defined to the system.

### **Period Calendar**

The <u>period</u> calendar defines the number of financial <u>periods</u> that your company uses within Cash Management for a financial year. You can create several <u>period</u> calendars for future years as well.

### **Miscellaneous Creditors**

Any suppliers not defined to Accounts Payable must be defined as <u>miscellaneous creditors</u> within Cash Management.

### **Extended Term**

If you wish to pay suppliers using a complex payment pattern, you can define this pattern to Cash Management. It can then be used within the Accounts Payable application.

### **Payment Methods**

Basic <u>payment methods</u>, including cheque, <u>BACS</u>, and so on, are already defined to the system. However, if you wish to define your own (particularly to distinguish between different types of <u>collection document</u>) you may do so.

# Chapter 2 Maintenance

### Maintenance

## **Cash Management Maintenance Functions**

The most important control information of any module is the <u>company profile</u>. Cash Management supports multiple companies, and each company must have a <u>company profile</u>. Each <u>company profile</u> holds the rules that govern the operation of Cash Management.

This section describes how you create and maintain a <u>company profile</u> in Cash Management, and how you set up the basic data necessary to operate the module.

Set up options as follows:

- Set up the company profile (windows 1 and 2).
- Set up the names and addresses of all the banks your company uses. This must be done before entering the <u>bank account</u> numbers themselves in the <u>company profile</u> (window 3).
- Any suppliers who are not defined to Accounts Payable must be defined in Cash Management
  as <u>miscellaneous creditors</u> so that journal or manual payments can be made to them.
- Set up <u>Reason Codes</u> in CS <u>Parameters</u> to use, for example, in writing off unpaid <u>collection</u> <u>documents</u>.
- Set up other <u>parameters</u>, such as the <u>payment class</u> PCLS. <u>Payment methods</u> are an
  extensively used feature of Cash Management and Accounts Payable, and should be set up with
  some care, as should any <u>extended terms</u> definitions, which govern the payment of invoices
  received by Accounts Payable.
- In the Maintain <u>Bank Account</u> task, create <u>cash apportionment</u> tables. These enable you to divide received cash between <u>bank accounts</u> in order to benefit from different interest rates, etc. The Maintain External Bank Details task is used if your bank needs to be notified of a customer's bank details, for example, to collect on a matured document.
- Use the Maintain <u>Interest and Commission</u> Charges task to apply expected bank charges to your accounts before receiving your statement, thus keeping the accounts up to date.

- Register cheque numbers (two tasks are available), particularly where a cheque is missing or out
  of sequence.
- Define schedules of settlement discounts for documents with the Maintain <u>Discount Codes</u> task.

Each maintenance task has a corresponding report task, which will provide you with a print out of the data entered.

### Maintain CS Company Profile [4/ASCO]

This section describes how to create or maintain the CS company profile.

Caution: First, you must ensure that you General Ledger is installed, with a complete chart of accounts. Each Cash Management company must have a corresponding company profile in general Ledger

Note: You cannot maintain a company profile when other users are using the module.

Caution: You should avoid changing existing company profiles once the application is in use, as this may corrupt your data. If a change is essential, it must be strictly controlled.

### Maintain Cash Management Company Selection Window

To display this window, select Maintain CS Company Profile task.

### Fields

### Company

Enter the code of the company you want to maintain.

Press Enter to display the Maintain Cash Management Company Profile window.

### Maintain Cash Management Company Profile Window

To display this window, select a company Press Enter on the Maintain Cash Management Company Selection window.

Use this window to enter your GL accounts and other posting options for Cash Management.

### <u>Fields</u>

### **Company Description**

If this is a new company, you must enter a company description.

The existing description will be displayed for an existing company.

### **General Ledger Company**

Enter the two-character code of the General Ledger company with which this company is linked.

**Note**: If you are in a <u>multi-company</u> environment, you must ensure that any Accounts Receivable or Accounts Payable companies linking to this company link to the same General <u>Ledger</u>.

### **Multi-Currency Posting**

Use this checkbox as follows:

Checked - If bank accounts can be held in any currency

Unchecked - If bank accounts can be held in base currency only

If this company is linked to <u>multi-currency</u> Accounts Payable or Accounts Receivable, payments can be made or received in any currency. Cash journals in this module can only be made in <u>base currency</u>.

### **Currency Rate Code**

For <u>multi-currency</u> Cash Management, you can enter the <u>default rate code</u> to be used to convert prime into base.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Currency Rate Code pop-up.

### **Currency Trading Account**

Enter the <u>default</u> General <u>Ledger account code</u>. This must be a valid <u>account code</u> set up in the General <u>Ledger</u> company specified above, and may be changed at any time.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Trading Account pop-up.

### **Default Charge Account**

Enter the <u>default</u> General <u>Ledger account code</u> for bank charges. This must be a valid <u>account code</u> set up in the General <u>Ledger</u> company specified above, and may be changed at any time.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Charge Account pop-up.

### **Default Bank Account**

Enter the <u>default</u> General <u>Ledger account code</u>. This must be a valid <u>account code</u> set up in the General <u>Ledger</u> company specified above. It may be changed at any time.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Bank Account pop-up.

Note: During initial set up, use the <u>prompt</u> facility and then select **Display Accounts Eligible to**Become <u>Bank Accounts</u> (F15).

### **Cash Mgmt Reference**

The module will allocate a reference number to all Cash Management transactions.

Enter a suitable starting number.

### **Petty Cash Reference**

The module will allocate a reference number to any <u>transaction</u> involving a <u>bank account</u> defined as a petty cash account.

Enter a suitable starting number.

### **Cash Mgmt Payment Run No**

Payments made via Cash Management are from a sequential run number.

Enter the next number to be allocated.

### **Print Output Lib/Queue**

Enter the name of the output queue to which reports are to be sent, and the library in which it resides.

### Cheque Output Lib/Queue

Enter the name of the output queue to which cheques and remittances are to be sent, and the library in which it resides.

### A/P Cheque Sequence

The value entered here controls the sequence in which cheques are printed in Accounts Payable.

Enter one of the following:

- 1 To print by ascending value
- 2 To print in supplier alpha code sequence
- 3 To print in supplier code sequence
- 4 To print in post code sequence
- 5 To print in supplier group 1 sequence
- 6 To print in supplier group 2 sequence
- 7 To print in supplier group 3 sequence
- 8 To print in supplier group 4 sequence

### **Country Code**

Enter the country code to act as the default code for Cash Management bank account details.

This field does not affect the financial workings of the system; this is done by the <u>country code</u> of the General <u>Ledger company profile</u> in conjunction with the country-specific <u>parameters</u> in the General <u>Ledger utilities</u>.

The code is not related to language or currency codes.

You can use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the <u>Parameter</u> Codes pop-up.

### **Default Payment Method**

<u>Payment methods</u> are user-defined within the Cash Management module. Any number of methods may be defined, although each will be of one of the following types:

- Cheque
- Transfer

- Electronic
- <u>Collection Documents</u>
- Cash
- Credit Card
- EDI

You can use the prompt facility to select from the Select Payment Method pop-up.

### Additional Bank Details

Use this checkbox as follows:

Checked - If you want to specify additional bank details to this company profile

Unchecked - If you do not want to specify additional bank details to this company profile

### **Collection Documents Reqd**

Use this checkbox as follows:

Checked - If you want to be able to post collection documents to this company

Unchecked - If you do not want to be able to post collection documents to this company

Enter or amend the data and Press Enter. A series of extension code pop-ups will be displayed, each pop-up corresponding to an <u>account code</u> you have entered on the window. You may change the <u>default</u> extension codes given, or Press Enter to accept them.

## Maintain Company Profile Collection Documents Window

To display this window, **check** the <u>Collection Documents</u> Reqd field on the Maintain Cash Management <u>Company Profile</u> window.

Use this window to enter collection document details.

### <u>Fields</u>

### **Next Bank Session Number**

Collection documents are sent to the bank in batches known as sessions.

Enter the number at which the automatic <u>session</u> numbering system is to begin.

### **Next Document Ref**

Each collection document has a unique internal reference number.

Enter the number at which the numbering system is to begin.

### **Next Journal Number**

This field is for future development.

### **Document Payable Account**

Enter the GL account to which the value of the document will be credited once the document is created.

Alternatively, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Select Documents Payable Account popup.

### **Document Receivable Account**

Enter the GL account that will hold the balance of documents accepted but not yet sent to the bank.

Alternatively, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Select Documents Receivable Account pop-up.

### Sold to Bank Account

Enter the GL account to be used to show the balance of documents sold to the bank. The account will be downdated when the document matures.

Alternatively, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Select Sold to <u>Bank Account</u> pop-up.

#### Sent to Bank Account

Enter the GL account to be used to show the balance of documents sent to the bank. The account will be downdated when the document matures.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Sent to Bank Account pop-up.

### **Unpaid Documents Account**

Enter the account to be used if a document is not paid.

The balance on the account will reflect the total value of unpaid documents. It will be downdated following the use of the Manage Unpaids task.

Alternatively, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Select Unpaid Documents Account popup.

### Auto Create Item Types

If <u>collection documents</u> are to be created automatically by the system, enter the <u>item</u> types to be included for creation.

### Summarise G/L Postings

Use this checkbox as follows:

Checked - To summarise GL postings

Unchecked - To keep each posting separate

This provides a more detailed audit trail.

### **Cash Apportionment**

Use this checkbox as follows:

Checked - If cash from collection documents can be apportioned to different banks

In this case, no credit checking will be done when selling to the bank.

Unchecked - If cash from collection documents cannot be apportioned to different banks

The way in which you want to apportion cash is specified in the Maintain <u>Cash Apportionment</u> Table task.

#### **Document Write Off Limit**

This field is for future development.

### **Minimum Document Value**

Enter the minimum amount for which a collection document may be created.

### **Document Creation Days**

Enter the number of days before the invoice <u>due date</u> when <u>collection documents</u> are to be created.

### Send to Bank Days

Enter the number of days before maturity that collection documents are to be sent to the bank.

### **Caution Days**

Enter the number of days between maturity and confirmation.

#### Recalled Doc. Reason Code

If you are using <u>third party documents</u> (where a customer settles a debt by passing on a third party's <u>collection document</u>), the system keeps a count of the following:

- Recalled documents (documents which are unpaid but not through the customer's fault)
- Unpaid Cambiale documents (Italian collection documents)
- Unpaid Riba documents (Italian direct debits)

<u>Third party documents</u> have a standard <u>reason code</u> set up. If the code you enter here is the same as this standard one, the recalled documents counter will be increased by 1.

Otherwise, the counter (Cambiale or Riba) will be determined from the setting of the unpaid counter type on the <u>payment method</u> of the unpaid document.

You can use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Select Unpaid Reason Code pop-up.

Complete the fields and Press Enter. A series of extension code pop-ups is displayed. Each pop-up corresponds to an <u>account code</u> you have entered on the window. You may change the <u>default</u> extension codes given, or simply Press Enter to accept them.

Press Enter on the final extension code pop-up to return to the Maintain Cash Management Company Selection window and complete the updates.

# Print CS Company Profile [14/ASCO]

Use this task to print out details of a selected Cash Management company profile.

### Report Company Profile Selection Window

To display this window, select the **Print CS** Company Profile task.

### **Fields**

### **Company Number**

Enter the company code for which you want to print the profile details.

Press Enter to submit the job to print the details. A confirmation message will be displayed.

## Maintain Bank Accounts [1/CSM]

This task enables you to define the <u>parameters</u> of each <u>bank account</u> to be used in this module. Once you have defined an account as a <u>bank account</u>, postings can take place only within Cash Management.

**Note**: Before defining this account, you must first take the Maintain Bank Names and Addresses task <u>and enter the name and address of the bank branch concerned.</u>

**Note**: The Bank Detail Maintenance window displayed at the end of <u>Bank Account</u> Maintenance varies depending on the <u>country code</u> set in the Maintain Bank Names and Addresses task. This will be in the form of the country's domestic <u>bank account</u> format.

However, if the Country-specific <u>Parameter</u> 47 in the General <u>Ledger</u> is on, the country's IBAN <u>bank</u> <u>account</u> format will be displayed. If the <u>parameter</u> is 1, only the IBAN format is displayed. If the <u>parameter</u> is 2, both IBAN and country-specific formats are displayed.

### Maintain Bank Accounts Selection Window

To display this window, select the **Maintain Bank Accounts** task.

Use this window to specify a bank account to maintain.

### **Fields**

### **Bank Account**

Enter a bank account to maintain.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Bank Account pop-up.

Enter a bank account and Press Enter to display the Maintain Bank Accounts window.

### Maintain Bank Accounts Window

To display this window, enter a <u>bank account</u> and Press Enter on the Maintain <u>Bank Accounts</u> Selection window.

Use this window to specify bank account details.

### Fields

### **Bank Account**

This field displays the account number for this bank account.

### **Bank Account Name**

This field displays the name by which this account is known, but you can amend it.

### **Bank Account Description**

You can optionally enter further descriptive text about the account. This could include the account number.

### Bank

This code refers to the bank in which the account is held. This code must have been previously set up in Cash Management, using the Maintain Bank Names and Addresses task.

You can use the prompt facility to select from the Select Bank Code pop-up.

### **Bank Account Type**

Enter a valid account type, which must have been set up in the Parameters file.

Alternatively, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Select Bank A/C Type pop-up.

### **Cheque Type**

Enter a valid cheque type, which must have been set up in the Parameters file.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Cheque Type pop-up.

### **Cheque Form**

Enter a valid cheque form code, which must have been set up in the Parameters file.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Cheque Form Type pop-up.

### **BACS User ID**

Enter a valid <u>BACS</u> ID to be used with this <u>bank account</u> for <u>BACS</u> payments.

**Note**: The option to enter a <u>BACS</u> user ID is only available if Country-specific <u>Parameter</u> 0046 in the General <u>Ledger utilities</u> is set on.

### Interest Rate

Enter an interest rate, if one is to be applied to the account. This is a reference field only, and the rate entered will not be used in calculations.

### Overdraft Limit

Enter an overdraft limit, if one is to be applied to the account. This is a reference field only, and the figure entered will not be used in calculations.

### Currency

This field displays the currency in which this account is held.

If this field is input-capable, you can use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Select Currency pop-up.

### **Suspense Account**

Enter a General Ledger account, which will act as a suspense account for this bank account.

If this field is left blank, any suspended transactions will be posted to the bank account itself.

You can use the prompt facility to select from the Select Suspense Account pop-up.

### Auto Suspension

Use this checkbox as follows:

Checked - To suspend all postings to this bank account

Unchecked - Not to suspend all postings to this bank account

### **Charge Account**

Enter a General Ledger account code to which bank charges will be debited.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Charge Account pop-up.

### **Journal Code**

Enter a valid journal code.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Parameter Codes pop-up.

### **Cash Apportionment**

Use this checkbox as follows:

Checked - If cash apportionment is to be used for this bank account

Unchecked - If <u>cash apportionment</u> is not to be used for this <u>bank account</u>

Press Enter. A series of <u>account code</u> extension pop-ups will be displayed. Press Enter on each of these to display the Maintain <u>Bank Accounts</u> Detail window, which asks for <u>collection document</u> processing details.

### Maintain Bank Accounts Detail Window

To display this window, Press Enter on the Maintain Bank Accounts window.

Use this window to enter collection document processing details.

### **Fields**

### **Documents Payable**

Enter the account to be credited when a <u>collection document</u> is created.

Alternatively, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Select Bills Payable pop-up.

### **Documents Receivable**

Enter the account to be debited when a collection document is accepted.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Bills Receivable pop-up.

#### Sent to Bank

Enter the account to be debited when the collection document is sent to the bank to mature.

Alternatively, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Select Sent-to-<u>Bank Account</u> pop-up.

### Sold to Bank

When <u>collection documents</u> are sold to the bank, the document receivable account is credited and the <u>bank account</u> is debited, while the sales suspense account is debited.

Enter the account to be debited when the sales suspense account is credited.

Alternatively, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Select Sold-with-Discount Account popup.

### Unpaid

If a <u>collection document</u> is not paid on maturity, whichever account the document is currently in will be credited, and the account defined here as the unpaid documents account will be debited.

Enter the account to be debited.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Unpaid Account pop-up.

### Interest

Enter the account to hold interest charges.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Commission Account pop-up.

### Sales Suspense

When <u>collection documents</u> are sold to the bank, the document receivable account is credited and the <u>bank account</u> is debited, while the sales suspense account is debited.

Enter the sales suspense account.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Sales Suspense Account pop-up.

### **Charges Tax Code**

Bank charges incurred when sending a document to bank are recorded against a tax code.

Enter the tax code to use for this purpose.

Alternatively, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Select Tax Code pop-up.

### **Commission Tax Code**

Bank commission charges incurred when sending a document to bank are recorded against a tax code.

Enter the tax code to use for this purpose.

Alternatively, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Select tax Code pop-up.

#### Maximum Bill Value

This field is for future development.

### **Maximum Session Value**

This field is for future development.

### **Sold Documents Credit Limit**

The bank may refuse to buy documents whose total value is over a certain limit.

Enter that limit here.

If the <u>Cash Apportionment</u> field on the previous window is **unchecked** and you try to sell documents of too great a value, a warning will be displayed.

### **Bank Charges per Document**

Use this checkbox as follows:

Checked - To record bank charges against individual documents

Unchecked - To record charges against a session

In this case, you simply enter the charges total for a <u>session</u> against that <u>session</u>. The system will then apportion the total value across each document in the <u>session</u> based on document

Press Enter to validate your entries or select **Update (F8)** to perform the update. Press Enter on each pop-up as the extension codes of the different accounts are displayed for maintenance. If no bank suspense account is used, select **Update (F8)** to remove the error message querying the lack of a suspense account.

### Bank Detail Maintenance Pop-up - Bank Detail

To display this pop-up, select **Update (F8)** on the Maintain <u>Bank Accounts</u> Detail window, if extended bank details have been set in the <u>Company Profile</u> and the IBAN <u>flag</u> (General <u>Ledger</u> Country-specific <u>Parameter</u> 47) is not set to **1** (i.e. is **0** or **2**). The pop-up will vary depending on the

<u>country code</u> set in the Maintain Bank Names and Addresses task and will be in the form of the country's domestic <u>bank account</u>. The UK format is displayed below.

### **Fields**

### **Bank Sort Code**

Enter the code for the bank.

### **Account Number**

Enter the account number.

### **Account Name**

Enter the name of the account.

Press Enter to close the window.

### Bank Detail Maintenance Pop-up - IBAN Details

To display this pop-up, select **Update (F8)** after confirming the required extension codes or Press Enter on the Bank Detail pop-up.

If Country-specific <u>Parameter</u> 47 in the General <u>Ledger</u> is set to **1**, this pop-up will be displayed after you have confirmed the required extension codes.

If the <u>parameter</u> is set to **2**, this pop-up will be displayed when you Press Enter on the Bank Detail pop-up.

### <u>Fields</u>

### **IBAN Code**

Enter the IBAN code. This code is mandatory and is always in upper case.

#### **BIC Code**

You can optionally enter this code. It is always in upper case.

#### **Account Name**

You can optionally enter the account name, using up to 35 characters.

# Maintain Bank Names and Addresses [2/CSM]

Before a <u>bank account</u> can be defined, it is necessary to create a record of the bank at which the account is held. This task enables you to do this.

More than one bank account may be held at a single bank.

### Maintain Bank Name and Address Selection Window

To display this window, select the **Bank Names and Addresses** task.

### Maintain Bank Name and Address Window

To display this window, enter the relevant bank code and Press Enter on the Maintain Bank Name and Address Selection window.

If the branch is being defined for the first time, the maintenance fields will be empty, but if you are maintaining a branch that already exists, the current details are displayed.

### **Fields**

### **Bank**

This field displays the bank code entered on the previous window.

### **Bank Name**

Enter the name of the bank.

### **Bank Address**

Five entry fields are provided to enable you to enter the full postal address of the branch of the bank specified.

### **Post Code**

Enter the postcode of the branch.

### **Country Code**

Enter the appropriate **country** code for the country of the bank.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Parameter Codes pop-up.

The entry in this field will determine the format of the Bank Detail pop-up displayed in the Maintain Bank Account task.

### **Functions**

### Delete (F11)

Use this to delete an existing bank name and address. You will be asked to select **Delete (F11)** again to confirm the deletion.

Press Enter to update the details.

# Maintain Parameters [3/CSM]

This task enables you to create and maintain the <u>parameters</u> used by Cash Management.

Two types of <u>parameters</u> exist in this task:

### System-created

These are delivered with the system with sub-codes that are required for standard operation of the module. You may only change the description and will be unable to delete the <u>parameter</u>.

#### **User-created**

You add this type of <u>parameter</u> with a description and sub-codes. Sub-codes are then available for operation of the module or selection by your users. Once created, user-created <u>parameters</u> can contain system pre-defined sub-codes.

**Note**: <u>Parameters</u> are listed in the alphabetic order of the <u>parameter</u> type code.

# Parameter File Maintenance Selection Window

To display this window, select the **Maintain Parameters** task.

This window lists <u>parameter</u> types that already exist.

### **Fields**

#### Src.

This field displays the source of the <u>parameter</u> as follows:

User - If the <u>parameter</u> was user-created

Sys - If the parameter was system-defined

### **Type**

See the CS Parameter Types List section for more information.

#### **Enter New Type**

Enter the 4-character code of the new CS parameter type to be defined.

### **Description (Untitled)**

Add a description for the <u>parameter</u>.

#### Sequence Required (Untitled)

Use this checkbox as follows:

Unchecked (<u>default</u>) - If the sub-types for the <u>parameter</u> cannot be sequenced for reporting purposes

Checked - If the sub-types for this parameter can be sequenced for reporting purposes

This displays as **0** or **1** in the Seq. Regd. field in the table.

### G/L Code Required (Untitled)

Use this checkbox as follows:

Checked - If you want a General <u>Ledger account code</u> to be defined for each sub-type for this <u>parameter</u>

Unchecked - If you do not want a General <u>Ledger account code</u> to be defined for each sub-type for this <u>parameter</u>

# **Code Length (Untitled)**

Enter the length of the sub-type code, which can be up to 10 characters.

#### **Options**

#### Maintain

Use this to maintain a parameter.

The code, description and other details will display at the bottom of the window under Maintain Type.

**Note**: Only the description may be changed on system-defined <u>parameters</u>.

#### **Delete**

Use this to delete a parameter.

Note: You may not delete system-defined parameters.

# **Sub-types**

Use this to maintain a sub-type.

A window displays with a list of the sub-types defined to the selected <u>parameter</u>. You may then select sub-types for amendment or deletion. At the bottom of the window, add new types.

**Note:** System-defined sub-types may not be deleted, although you can change the description. Make your amendments and Press Enter to update the display.

# Parameter File Maintenance Sub-Types Window

To display this window, select **Sub-types** for a <u>parameter</u> type on the <u>Parameter</u> File Maintenance Selection window.

This window displays codes set up for the main <u>parameter</u> type. System codes are created by the system and you may only amend the description. User codes are created by you and may be amended when required.

#### <u>Fields</u>

#### Src.

This field displays the source of the <u>parameter</u> sub-code. It is **User** if the <u>parameter</u> was set up by users or **Sys**. if the system automatically created the <u>parameter</u> type and sub-types.

#### **Enter Code**

To add a new sub-type, enter the new code here.

#### **Description (Untitled)**

If you are adding a sub-type, enter its description.

If you are amending a sub-type, you can amend the description.

# **Options**

#### Maintain

Use this to maintain a sub-type's description.

The sub-type's details will be displayed in the fields at the bottom of the window.

#### **Delete**

Use this to delete the sub-type.

**Note:** System-defined sub-types cannot be deleted.

Press Enter to validate the entry and then select **Exit (F3)** to exit the task.

# **CS** Parameters Types List

**Note**: An asterisk (\*) before the <u>parameter</u> type indicates <u>collection document</u> <u>parameter</u> codes.

The CS parameters are listed in alphabetic order.

### **BEPM**

Banking Engine Payment Methods

Add sub-codes of payment methods that will be processed using the Banking Engine

#### \*BKGP

Bank Group

Add sub-codes to identify bank groups. At the Italian Bank pop-up, you would then add the bank group code. Bank Detail pop-ups display in the Customer and Supplier Maintenance tasks.

**Note**: This <u>item</u> is normally used in Italy.

Example user sub-codes: CEN Central, PRV Provincial

#### \*BOET

### Bill of Exchange Type

The system pre-defines <u>collection documents</u> as sub-types 0 (LCC), 1 (LCR) and 2 (BOR) to identify Accounts Payable <u>collection document transaction types</u>.

#### **BRCD**

Tape Format Records

Add sub-types for the tape format records which you want to be excluded when loading the tape in the Automatic Bank Reconciliation task.

#### **BTYP**

Bank Type

Bank account types are pre-defined by the system as CAL (Overnight Call Account), CUR (Current Account), FAC (Short-term Facility), OD (Overdraft Account) and P/C (Petty Cash Account). You may add sub-codes for your alternative bank types.

Bank types are applied in <u>Bank Account</u> Maintenance and may be used as selection criteria in the Statement of Balances and Daily Movement reports.

#### **CBPM**

Cashbook Payment Methods

Add payment methods that are to generate SEPA credit transfers via Cashbook (third party product)

#### \*CDDO

Collection Document Discount Override

This is no longer used.

#### **CFMT**

Cheque Format

One system-defined cheque form type of CF (<u>Default</u> Cheque Form) is included. Add your own form types for each cheque stationery type used.

Cheque form types are assigned to individual banks via the Maintain Bank Account task.

#### **CLRD**

Cleared Date Entry

This <u>parameter</u> is linked to sub-codes in <u>parameter</u> BTYP. Add bank types (which are already set up in BTYP) to take effect in the Bank <u>Statement Reconciliation</u> task.

For the bank types included here, a cleared date (rather than a global statement date) may be entered against the items cleared.

#### **CTYP**

Cheque Type

The system pre-defines cheque and remittance output types of C (Combined Cheque and Remittance), I (Separate Cheque and Remittance) and R (Remittance Only). Add your own additional cheque and remittance output types as required.

Cheque output types are assigned to individual <u>bank accounts</u> via <u>Bank Account</u> Maintenance. This will define the output format of print file(s) created for payments made from the <u>bank</u> account.

#### \*DRDB

#### **Direct Debit Methods**

Add <u>payment methods</u> as sub-codes to be added to the <u>Collection Documents</u> <u>Direct Debit</u> Creation task. This will allow a GL Posting distinction between <u>direct debits</u> and <u>collection</u> <u>documents</u>.

### Example:

- 1 In the Maintain <a href="Payment Method">Payment Method</a> task, set up <a href="payment method">payment method</a> DDM to be used for <a href="maintain">direct</a> <a href="maintain">debit</a> payments.
- 2 Add DDM as a sub-code here.
- 3 In the <u>Direct Debit</u> Creation task (43/CSD) create a <u>direct debit</u> with selected DDM payment types.

#### **EBDR**

#### **EDI** without Bank Details

For suppliers who make payments by <u>EDI</u>, the system will normally require the supplier's <u>bank</u> <u>account</u> details. However, payment advice and remittance details received via <u>EDI</u> may not include bank details. To allow for this you must add a sub-code which would also be defined as a separate <u>payment method</u>.

**Note**: <u>EDI Payment Methods</u> are defined with a Payment Type of 7 in <u>Payment Methods</u> Maintenance in Cash Management.

#### **ETYP**

# **Item** Type

The system pre-defines <u>transaction types</u> to be used for processing throughout your Cash Management module as sub-codes CC (Cash), CD (<u>Collection Document</u>), CG (Charges Value), CX (Cancelled Cash), JP (Journal Payment) etc.

#### **OCRC**

#### Cheque Reason Code

The system pre-defines sub-codes as 01 (Processed Cheque), 02 (Skipped Cheque) and 99 (Cancelled Cheque). You may create additional sub-codes as <u>reason codes</u> for cheque numbers.

Reasons are then selected in the Omitted Cheques Maintenance and Cheque Register Report tasks. This ensures that all cheque numbers, whether used or spoilt, are accounted for.

# \*OMDT

## Override Maturity Dates

Set up sub-codes as <u>payment methods</u> which will allow your users to override the <u>maturity date</u> of accounts payable <u>collection documents</u>. The <u>maturity date</u> would be overridden in the Payments option of the Release Outstanding Supplier Payments task.

#### **PCDE**

PL Payment Code

This is no longer used.

#### \*PCLS

#### **Payment Class**

Add sub-codes to group similar types of payment methods for collection documents.

<u>Payment classes</u> are then used at document creation <u>sessions</u> and when sending cash collection letters.

#### \*PDUS

#### **Review Code**

You may add codes for collection documents which will require review.

Review codes will be used in the Collection Documents Manual Creation task where documents may be assigned a code for review at a later stage.

**Note**: It is recommended that you read the sub-section Using <u>Review Codes</u> under the section The <u>Collection Document</u> Cycle.

#### **PMTH**

#### Payment Method

This is no longer used.

#### **RCOD**

#### Reason Code

The system pre-defines the sub-code CV (Currency Variance), which is used during the processing of <u>multi-currency transactions</u> where <u>exchange rate</u> variances occur.

You may create additional <u>reason codes</u>, linked to appropriate GL accounts which will be used during the entry of cash <u>transactions</u>, journal receipts or payments for directing postings to the correct GL accounts.

### **RTYP**

Report Type

This is no longer used.

#### **SDDB**

**Electronic Direct Debits** 

Add payment methods that are to generate electronic direct debits.

Note. These should have 'include in auto create' set to yes, and a 'payment type' of 'collection document'.

#### **SDDL**

**Direct Debit Local Instrument** 

This is used in the electronic message created for direct debits when ION is in use.

If a customer has a payment method which is an electronic direct debit (payment method type 4 and defined in the CS parameter SDDB), then this is entered in the Debit Transfer Additional Details

It is used to specify a local instrument, local clearing option and/or further qualify the service or service level. Either as a code or a proprietary text. Codes can be governed by the ISO 20022 external code list if supported by the bank.

#### **SDDP**

**Direct Debit Category Purpose** 

This is used in the electronic message created for direct debits when ION is in use.

If a customer has a payment method which is an electronic direct debit (payment method type 4 and defined in the CS parameter SDDB), then this is entered in the Debit Transfer Additional Details

It is used to specify the high-level purpose of the instruction based on a set of pre-defined categories. Either as a code or a proprietary text. Usage: This is used by the initiating party to provide information concerning the processing of the payment. Codes can be governed by the ISO 20022 external code list if supported by the bank.

#### SDDS

Direct debit sequence

Add types of sequence to be used in the electronic direct debit generation.

The following system-defined parameters are given:

FRST First
OOFF One-off
FNAL Final
RCUR Re-current

This is used in the electronic message created for direct debits when Local.ly is in use.

If a customer has a payment method which is an electronic direct debit (payment method type 4 and defined in the CS parameter SDDB), then this is entered in the Debit Transfer Additional Details

#### **SDDT**

Direct Debit Transfer Type

This is used in the electronic message created for direct debits when ION is in use.

If a customer has a payment method which is an electronic direct debit (payment method type 4 and defined in the CS parameter SDDB), then this is entered in the Debit Transfer Additional Details

This is the agreement or rules under which the direct debit transactions may be processed. e.g. 'SEPA'

#### **SRCE**

### **Transaction Source**

The system pre-defines sub-codes G (General <u>Ledger</u>), S (Accounts Receivable) and C (Cash Management) to identify the <u>transaction</u> source.

<u>Transaction</u> source codes may be used as selection criteria to limit output in the Currency by Bank Account report.

#### **SSBK**

**Bank Status** 

The system pre-defines the sub-codes C (Confirmed), P (Provisional) or S (Suspended) to indicate the status of each <u>transaction</u> held against a <u>bank account</u>.

#### **SSPO**

Posted Status

The system pre-defines the sub-codes C (Confirmed), H (Held), S (Suspended), T (To be Posted) and X (Cancelled) to indicate the posting status of Cash Management <u>transactions</u>.

#### \*TSTS

**Document Status** 

The system pre-defines sub-codes to report the status of <u>collection documents</u>, for example, 02 (Statement), 05 (Unaccepted), 10 (Accepted), 15 (Disputed), 25 (In <u>Session</u>), 30 (Sent to Bank), 32 (Sold to Bank) and 39 (Unpaid).

## **TSUB**

Type/Sub-type

This is no longer used.

### \*UBRC

Bill Reason Code

This is no longer used.

### **UNAL**

**Unallocated Cash Codes** 

This is no longer used.

# \*UPRC

Unpaid Reason Code

You may add sub-codes as reasons for <u>collection documents</u> being unpaid. They are used to identify and manage unpaid <u>collection documents</u>.

# Maintain Period End Calendar [4/CSM]

# Maintain Calendar File Selection Window

To display this window, select the **Maintain Period End Calendar** task.

#### **Fields**

#### Period

Enter the required period in YYMM format.

Press Enter to display the Maintain Calendar File window.

# Maintain Calendar File Window

To display this window, enter the <u>period</u> (in YYMM format) for which you want to define an opening date on the Maintain Calendar File selection window.

The <u>period</u> end calendar holds the <u>period</u> end date for each <u>ledger period</u>. It is used in the <u>period</u> end procedures, and to validate some reporting <u>parameters</u>. The calendar must be set up to complete the <u>period</u> end routine.

### **Fields**

#### **Date Opened**

Enter or select the start date for the period.

Press Enter to accept the date entered.

# Maintain Sundry Creditors [5/CSM]

Any suppliers not defined to Accounts Payable as suppliers can be defined as creditors here to enable payments to be made. It is easier to process one-off payments via this task as the <u>miscellaneous creditor</u> account can be deleted afterwards.

# Maintain Miscellaneous Creditors Selection Window

To display this window, select the Maintain Sundry Creditors task.

Use this window to select a creditor for maintenance.

#### **Fields**

#### **Miscellaneous Creditor**

Enter a creditor.

Alternatively, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Select <u>Miscellaneous Creditor</u> pop-up.

Enter a creditor and Press Enter to display the Maintain Miscellaneous Creditors window.

# Maintain Miscellaneous Creditors Window

To display this window, enter a creditor and Press Enter on the Maintain <u>Miscellaneous Creditors</u> Selection window.

Use this window to define details of a miscellaneous creditor.

# **Fields**

#### Name

Enter the name of the creditor.

#### Address Line1-4

Four fields are provided for the entry of the creditor's postal address.

### **Post Code**

Enter the postcode.

#### **Phone**

Enter the creditor's telephone number.

### **Contact Name**

Enter a contact name if required.

This is a reference field for you to use as you want.

#### Notes/Remarks

You can optionally enter any further notes about the creditor.

# **Country Code**

Enter the relevant country code for the creditor.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Parameter Codes pop-up.

# **Default Payment Method**

Enter a default payment method for this creditor.

Alternatively, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Select <u>Payment Method</u> pop-up.

The <u>payment method</u> is validated against the <u>Payment Methods</u> Maintenance file.

When miscellaneous payments are made, the <u>bank account</u> is not needed for the most common payment types of, for example, cash or cheque, so for such <u>miscellaneous creditors</u>, there is no need to enter a <u>bank account</u>.

However, if the selected <u>payment method</u> for a sundry creditor has a Payment Type of **Transfer**, **Electronic** or <u>Collection Document</u>, a Bank pop-up is displayed so that a <u>bank account</u> may be entered. If the <u>Bank Account</u> Format <u>flag</u> is set to <u>Local</u> in <u>Payment Method</u> Maintenance, the national <u>bank account</u> pop-up is displayed. If it is set to <u>IBAN</u>, the IBAN pop-up is displayed.

# **Default Payment Currency**

Enter a default payment currency for this creditor.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Currency pop-up.

# **Default Payment Bank Account**

Enter a default payment bank account for this creditor.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Bank Account pop-up.

### **Functions**

# Delete (F11)

Use this to delete an existing creditor.

Press Enter to display the Miscellaneous Creditors Bank Details pop-up.

# Miscellaneous Creditors Bank Details Pop-up

To display this window, Press Enter in the Maintain <u>Miscellaneous Creditors</u> window if the <u>payment method</u> specified has a Payment Type of **Transfer**, **Electronic** or <u>Collection Document</u>.

Use this window to enter bank details.

The details required will vary from country to country. The UK version is shown above. Enter the details and then Press Enter to update.

# Maintain Extended Terms [6/CSM]

This task provides you with a very flexible method of making a payment by instalments. It is used by the Accounts Receivable and Accounts Payable modules. Holidays and weekends may be considered in the calculation.

**Note**: The GL Country-specific <u>Parameters</u> <u>Due Date</u> Exclude Weekends/Holidays (<u>parameter</u> numbers 23-24) must be set up.

A three-character <u>extended terms</u> code is entered, and it is this which holds the details of how the payments are to be made. Each installment has its own <u>payment terms</u> defined, can be any proportion of the total invoice, and can be paid using any defined <u>payment method</u>.

# Maintain Extended Terms Selection Window

To display this window, select the **Maintain Extended Terms** task.

Use this window to select the <u>extended terms</u> you want to set up or amend.

#### <u>Fields</u>

### Receivables/Payables Company

Enter the company for which extended terms are to be defined.

This field defaults to the current company.

#### **Extended Terms**

Enter the code that identifies the extended terms you are about to define or amend.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Extended Terms pop-up.

#### Range Terms

**Note**: This field is not displayed until the <u>Extended Terms</u> code has been entered.

Use this checkbox as follows:

Unchecked (<u>default</u>) - To set up <u>extended terms</u>

Checked - To set up pre-determined <u>due dates</u> for invoices that fall within a range of dates

You can split 31 days into different ranges of dates.

When these fields are completed, Press Enter to display the Maintain **Extended Terms** window.

# Maintain Extended Terms Window

To display this window, enter the required details and Press Enter on the Maintain <u>Extended Terms</u> Selection window.

Use this window to set up details of your extended payment terms.

#### **Fields**

#### Minimum Invoice Value

An invoice for a particularly small amount may not be worth paying by instalment. Any invoice total which is less than the amount entered here will be paid in a single payment on the date of the first instalment.

#### **Spread Control**

Enter the total of all the spread factors

A message will warn you of any discrepancy between this total and the actual total of spread factors entered. For example, enter **100** if the spread factors are entered as percentages.

When you have entered the individual factors, a message will inform you if they do not add up to the total entered.

#### **Terms**

This field is split into three smaller fields, which together define the <u>payment terms</u> of each installment.

### First Field

This contains a single-character code, which defines the type of terms to be used. The following codes are valid:

- D Number of days from invoice date
- M Number of months before payment
- P Periodic range

### Second Field (for Periodic Range)

The second field is used with the code **P** to indicate your <u>periodic</u> range. You are, in effect, redefining the <u>period</u> in which <u>due dates</u> are to be calculated.

Example: Periodic Range

Terms	Payment Method	Spread Factor
P 2019 106	DD	

This example can be explained as:

P = Periodic payments

20 = the first day of your re-defined period

19 = the last day of your re-defined period

1 = add one month to the end of the re-defined period

06 = make the <u>due date</u> fall on the 6th of the added month

This table shows four example invoices (using the example terms) with calculated <u>due dates</u>.

		Due Date
Invoice Date	Invoice is in the Re-defined Current Period:	(Add 1 calendar month to the end of the redefined current period)
13.05.06	20.04.06 -19.05.06	06.06.06
20.05.06	20.05.06 -19.06.06	06.07.06
19.06.06	20.05.06 - 19.06.06	06.07.06
20.06.06	20.06.06 - 19.07.06	06.08.06

### Third Field (Payment Date)

The value of this field depends on what is entered in the first field:

If the first field is **D**, this field holds the number of days in the format DDD.

If the first field is **P** or **M**, this field holds the month and the date in the format MDD.

# **Examples:**

A code of D \_\_\_\_\_ 030 means that the payment date is 30 days from the invoice date.

A code of M \_\_\_\_\_ 210 means a payment will be made on the 10th of the second month after the month in which the invoice was sent.

See also the periodic range example.

### **Payment Method**

Enter or select the payment method code.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Payment Method pop-up.

#### **Spread Factor**

Enter the proportion of the total which is to be paid by each specific instalment on the invoice.

### **Tax Payment Method**

Enter the method by which the tax on the invoice is to be paid.

#### **Tax Terms**

These three fields define the terms of the tax payment.

### First Field

The first field contains a single-character code, which defines the type of terms to be used.

The following codes are valid:

D - Number of days from invoice date

### M - Number of months before payment

# P - Periodic range

For further explanation, see the Terms field, described above.

#### **Functions**

### Delete (F11)

Use this to delete an existing extended terms definition.

# Fixed Days (F14)

Use this if you want payments to be made on specific dates in the month. <u>Due dates</u> will be rounded up to the next fixed date available.

In our example, payment days will always be rounded up to the 5th, 15th or 25th of the current or next month. An invoice dated 02.04.06 would therefore be given a payment <u>due date</u> of 05.05.06.

When you have defined the terms to your satisfaction, select **Update (F8)** to update.

# Maintain Extended Terms with Range

To display this window, **check** the Range Terms field on the Maintain <u>Extended Terms</u> Selection window.

Use this window to set up pre-determined <u>due dates</u> for invoices which fall within a range of dates. You can split 31 days into different ranges of dates.

#### **Fields**

#### Inv. Day From/To

Enter a From date and a To date.

**First example**: 1 06 means that invoices dated between the 1st and 6th (of any month) will be selected.

**Second example**: 7 15 means that invoices dated between the 7th and 15th (of any month) will be selected.

#### **Due Date Month/Day**

The first field here holds an "advance by number of months" value, and the second a pre-set <u>due</u> <u>date</u>.

First example: 2 12 means that if the invoice falls within the range of dates set up under Inv. Day then advance by 2 months (so if the invoice month is May, the due month will be July) and make the due date the 12th.

Second example: 2 25 means that if an invoice is dated 10th April it will have a <u>due date</u> of 25th June.

#### **Functions**

# Delete (F11)

Use this to delete an existing extended terms definition.

Select Update (F8) to update the definition.

# Maintain Payment Methods [7/CSM]

This task enables you to define your own <u>payment methods</u> to Cash Management. Any number of methods may be defined, but each must be of one of seven types:

- 1 Cheque
- 2 Transfer
- 3 Electronic
- 4 Collection document
- 5 Cash
- 6 Credit card
- 7 EDI

Some of the fields available are relevant only to defining different types of collection document.

# Payment Method Maintenance Selection Window

To display this window, select the **Maintain** Payment Method task.

#### **Fields**

# **Payment Method**

Enter a payment method.

Alternatively, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Select <u>Payment Method</u> pop-up.

Enter the <u>payment method</u> you want to set up or amend and Press Enter to display the <u>Payment Method</u> Maintenance window.

# Payment Method Maintenance Window

To display this window, enter the <u>payment method</u> you want to set up or amend and Press Enter on the <u>Payment Method</u> Maintenance Selection window.

The payment method entered on the selection window is displayed at the top of this window.

# **Fields**

#### **Description**

Enter your description for this <u>payment method</u>.

### **Payment Class**

Enter the payment class to which the payment method is to belong.

The payment class is used to select the collection documents for a new bank session.

Alternatively, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Select <u>Payment Class</u> pop-up.

**Note**: The <u>payment class</u> must already be defined under the PCLS <u>parameter</u> on the Cash Management <u>Parameters</u> file.

#### Max. Items on Document

If you want to restrict the number of <u>items</u> (invoices) to be paid on a single <u>collection document</u>, enter the maximum number of <u>items</u> to be allowed.

This is relevant to automatically created documents only, NOT to manually created ones.

## **Include in Auto-Create**

Use this checkbox as follows:

Checked - If <u>collection documents</u> of this type are to be created automatically by the Accounts Receivable auto-create routine

Unchecked - If documents are always to be created manually

#### **Statement Only**

This is relevant to Accounts Receivable collection documents only.

Use this checkbox as follows:

Checked - If statements are to be printed without creating a collection document

Unchecked - If statements are to be printed and should create a collection document

Note: This field can be checked only if the Acceptance Method field is set to Creation.

### **Acceptance Method**

This is relevant to Accounts Receivable collection documents only.

Select one of the following:

Manual - If the customer is to review the documents before accepting them

Creation - If the document is sent by the customer, and so will be <u>flagged</u> as accepted as soon as it is entered on the system

None - If the document is to be created and processed without any formal acceptance from the customer at all, there being an agreement to this effect between you and the customer

# **Print Required**

Use this checkbox as follows:

Unchecked - If <u>collection documents</u> can collect or send payments electronically, without the need for a printed copy

Checked - To produce a printed copy of collection documents

#### Sale Value

Use this checkbox as follows:

Checked - If the early sale of a collection document at a discount price is to be allowed

Unchecked - If the early sale of collection documents at a discount price is not allowed

#### Usage

Use this to specify where this <u>payment method</u> is to be used.

Select one of the following:

Accounts Receivable only

Accounts Payable only

Both

The system will prevent you from using a method in an unspecified module.

# Medium

This field indicates which method is to be used to send payment details to the bank:

Select one of the following:

Paper - If details are to be sent on paper

Tape - If details are to be sent on tape

Electronically - If details are to be sent electronically

#### **Payment Type**

Select one of the following to indicate the correct payment type for the <u>payment method</u> you are creating:

Cheque

Transfer

Electronic

Collection document

Cash

Credit card

Electronic transfer

**Boleto** 

#### EDI

**Note**: Payment types can be grouped by entering a code in the <u>Payment Class</u> field on this window.

#### **Bank Account Format**

Select one of the following to set the bank account format:

Local - Local Bank Format

IBAN - IBAN Format

SWIFT (3) – SWIFT Format

Specific (4) – Specific Format

If a specific format is specified, then an 'Entry Program' must also be specified.

**Note**: The use of IBAN format depends on the setting of Company-specific <u>Parameter</u> 047 in GL <u>Utilities</u>.

### **Unpaid Counter Type**

This field is relevant mainly for Italian companies.

Select one of the following:

Cambraille

Riba

If you are using <u>third party documents</u> where a customer settles a debt by passing on a third party's <u>collection document</u>, the system keeps a count of the following:

- Recalled documents (documents which are unpaid but not through the customer's fault)
- Unpaid Cambraille/Cambiale documents (French/Italian collection documents)
- Unpaid Riba documents (Italian <u>direct debits</u>)

The setting here determines whether this <u>payment method</u> is Cambraille/Cambiale or Riba.

#### **Maximum Document Value**

Enter any maximum value as required.

## **Consolidation Method**

Select one of the following:

<u>Item</u> - To create one payment within Accounts Payable for each payable <u>item</u> irrespective of the supplier balance

Due Date - To create a separate payment for each due date with items outstanding

Cut-Off Date - To create one payment for all items up to the cut off date for the payment cycle

Non-zero Supplier Balance - To create one payment within Accounts Payable for each <u>item</u> where the outstanding supplier balance is more than zero

#### **GIRO Reference**

If the <u>payment method</u> requires a Post Office GIRO Reference to be entered when posting an invoice in Accounts Payable.

Use this checkbox as follows:

Unchecked - GIRO reference not required

Checked - GIRO reference is required

# **Entry Program**

For a 'specific' <u>Bank Account</u> Format, an associated entry program must be specified in order to format and validate the <u>bank account</u> details.

This is to support Bank Formats other than the other three types. If a suitable program does not already exist, then one will need to be written and associated to the <u>payment method</u> here. It is recommended that the program has the name 'GL035ABC' where ABC is the <u>payment method</u>.

Press Enter to validate your entries and select **Update** (F8) to update the <u>payment method</u>.

# Card Validation Requirements Pop-up

To display this pop-up, set the Payment Type to Credit Card on the <u>Payment Method</u> Maintenance window and Press Enter.

#### **Fields**

#### Card Type

Enter one of the following:

A - American Express

M - Mastercard

S - Switch

V - Visa

Alternatively, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Select Credit Card Type pop-up.

### **Issue Number Required**

Use this checkbox as follows:

Unchecked - If an issue number is not required

Checked - If an issue number is required

#### **Security Number Required**

Use this checkbox as follows:

Unchecked - If a security number is not required

Checked - If a security number is required

# **Security Number Length**

If a security number is required, enter the length of the number required.

## **Address Verification Required**

Use this checkbox as follows:

Unchecked - If the address does not need to be verified for credit cards

Checked - If the address must be verified for credit cards

Press Enter to validate and update your entries and return to the previous window.

Alternatively, select Previous (F12) to return to the previous window without update.

# Maintain Cash Apportionment Table [8/CSM]

When cash is received into the system, it is useful to be able to divide it into different <u>bank accounts</u>, so that a proportion of the money can be earning a high interest rate, for example, while the balance is kept in an easy-access account.

This task enables you to apportion cash according to its payment method.

# Maintain Cash Apportionment Table Selection Window

To display this window, select the Maintain Cash Apportionment Table task.

#### **Fields**

### **Payment Class**

Enter the payment class for which you want to set up a cash apportionment table.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Payment Class pop-up.

Enter a payment class and Press Enter to display the Maintain Cash Apportionment Table window.

# Maintain Cash Apportionment Table Window

To display this window, enter the <u>payment class</u> for which you want to set up a <u>cash apportionment</u> table and Press Enter on the Maintain <u>Cash Apportionment</u> Table Selection window.

Use this window to specify how cash is to be apportioned.

#### **Fields**

# **Minimum Apportionment Value**

If the total value of a <u>session</u> is less than the value entered here, it will not be apportioned to different <u>bank accounts</u>, but will instead be sent to the low value <u>bank account</u> specified.

#### Low Value Bank Account

Enter the bank account to which any low value session will be sent.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Bank Account pop-up.

#### **Maximum Document Value**

Single documents with a value above this value will not be apportioned, but sent in <u>session</u> to the high value <u>bank account</u>.

#### **High Value Bank Account**

Enter the bank account to which high value documents will be sent.

Alternatively, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Select <u>Bank Account</u> pop-up.

#### Bank

Enter the General Ledger bank account number.

Alternatively, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Select <u>Bank Account</u> pop-up.

### Apportionment

Enter the percentage of the whole <u>session</u> value which you want to be sent to this <u>bank account</u>.

#### **Functions**

#### Delete (F11)

Use this to delete an existing <u>cash apportionment</u> table.

Select Update (F8) to update the data.

# Maintain External Bank Details [9/CSM]

It is often necessary, when cashing <u>collection documents</u> or other documents, to tell your bank where to collect the money. If your customers and suppliers use a range of <u>bank accounts</u>, a record of these accounts will help you to specify which account is to be used.

This task enables you to maintain such a record.

# External Bank Account Maintenance Window

To display this window, select the External Bank Details task.

Use this window to specify external bank account details.

#### **Fields**

# **Company Code**

This field <u>defaults</u> to the current company, but can be changed to another company whose customers or suppliers you want to maintain.

# **Type**

Select one of the following:

General - For a general Account number

Customer - For a customer account number

Supplier - For a supplier account number

#### **Account Code**

Enter the customer or supplier account. For a general account, this field must be left blank.

Press Enter to see the External Bank Account Maintenance List window, listing the accounts defined so far.

# External Bank Account Maintenance List Window

To display this window, Press Enter on the External Bank Account Maintenance window.

### **Options**

#### Change

Use this to modify existing details on the Bank Detail pop-up.

This is only available for general accounts.

#### **Delete**

Use this to delete an existing account

## **Functions**

### Add (F10)

Use this to enter a new account. The Payment Method and Currency pop-up is displayed.

### Greater Detail/Less Detail (F15)

Use this to toggle the amount of detail displayed.

Select Exit (F3) to leave the task.

# Payment Method and Currency Pop-up

To display this window, select the Add (F10) to add new external bank account details

Use this window to specify the <u>payment method</u> and currency for the <u>external bank account</u> details to be added.

#### **Fields**

### Payment method

The payment method must be entered.

You can use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Select <u>Payment Method</u> pop-up.

# **Currency code**

Leave <u>currency code</u> blank so that this <u>bank account</u> applies to all currencies, or enter a Code to restrict to a specific currency.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Currency pop-up.

The bank details pop up will now be formatted according to the <u>Bank Account</u> Format <u>flag</u> on the <u>payment method</u> specified here, rather than the one on the customer or supplier, allowing multiple <u>bank account</u> formats per customer or supplier

# Maintain Interest & Commission Charges [10/CSM]

This task enables a bank charge, in this instance, for cashing <u>collection documents</u>, to be handled. You may be charged a certain fee for each document banked, and a specified amount for any unpaid document. If you sell a document to the bank before it matures, the amount of money you receive depends on the date of maturity.

This task enables you to enter these charges on the system, so that the charges incurred each <u>session</u> can be calculated automatically.

# Interest and Commission Charges Initial Window

To display this window, select the Maintain Interest & Commission Charges task.

Use this window to specify the bank account to which the charges are to be applied.

#### **Fields**

#### **Bank Account**

Enter the bank account to which the charges are to be applied.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Bank Account pop-up.

### **Payment Method**

Certain documents may be charged differently to others. Enter the <u>payment method</u> to which these charges refer.

Alternatively, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Select <u>Payment Method</u> pop-up.

# **Effectivity Date**

Enter or select the date on which these charges come into effect.

When you have completed the above fields, Press Enter to display the Maintain <u>Interest and Commission</u> Charges window.

# Maintain Interest and Commission Charges Window

To display this window, complete the details and Press Enter on the <u>Interest and Commission</u> Charges Initial window.

Use this window to create and amend your bank commission and interest. Enter the values of commission charge, and the tax code, with days and percentage where applicable.

#### **Fields**

#### **Commission Charge**

Enter the value to be charged by the bank on each individual document.

#### Tax Code

Enter the appropriate tax code to reflect the tax rate applied to the commission charge.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Tax Code pop-up.

# **Unpaid Charge**

Enter the value to be charged by the bank for each unpaid item.

#### **Tax Code**

Enter the appropriate tax code to reflect the tax rate applied to the unpaid charge.

Alternatively, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Select Tax Code pop-up.

#### **Interest Tax Code**

Enter a tax code for any interest charge.

Alternatively, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Select tax Code pop-up.

#### Days

Enter the number of days to elapse before the document matures.

#### Rate %

Enter the rate to be charged on the value of the document.

**Note**: The rate of interest charged depends on the number of days to maturity. No grading of the rate is possible here. If the charging policy of your bank cannot be fully represented here, you may prefer to enter your bank charges separately when each <u>session</u> is run.

Select **Update (F8)** to update the data. Alternatively, select **Update & Resequence (F20)** to update and re-sequence the data.

# Cheque Sequences [11/CSM]

This task enables you to define to the system all the cheque numbers in use. You assign a batch number to a sequence of cheques, and this number is unique for the <u>bank account</u>.

Cheque numbers assigned to payments will now be validated against these batches. The use of cheque sequences is optional.

# Cheque Sequence Initial Window

To display this window, select the Cheque Sequences task.

Use this window to specify the bank account and batch of the cheque sequence.

### **Fields**

#### **Bank Account**

Enter an existing bank account.

Alternatively, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Select <u>Bank Account</u> pop-up.

#### **Batch Number**

Enter the number of the batch to be maintained.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Cheque Batch Selection pop-up.

The batch number is used to reference a block of cheque numbers which are in use or which have been used. The batch number is unique for the <u>bank account</u>.

Press Enter to display the Maintain Cheque Sequence Details window.

# Maintain Cheque Sequence Details Window

To display this window, enter the required details on the Cheque Sequence Initial window and Press Enter.

### **Fields**

### **Cheque Source**

Select one of the following:

Accounts Payable - If the cheque batch refers to Accounts Payable cheques

Cash Management - If the cheque batch refers to Cash Management cheques

#### **Start Cheque Number**

Enter the first cheque number in the block of cheques. This must not be a number which has been used before, or a number which exists within another sequence.

Once cheques within the batch have been posted, this reference may not be changed.

### **Sequence Active**

Select one of the following:

Inactive - If the cheque sequence is inactive

Active - If the sequence is active

This setting is used when producing the cheque register report to determine the cheque details to be printed.

Archive - If, when the cheque sequence is run, the batch can be archived

Press Enter to perform the update.

# Omitted Cheques [12/CSM]

This task enables you to record cheques that are to be omitted from a batch sequence of cheques. This enables the system to keep track of cancelled or otherwise missing cheques. A <u>reason code</u> must be assigned.

# Omitted Cheques Maintenance Window

To display this window, select the **Omitted Cheques** task.

Use this window to record the details of any cheque omitted from a sequence.

#### **Fields**

# **Bank Account**

Enter an existing bank account.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Bank Account pop-up.

# **Cheque Source**

Select one of the following:

Accounts Payable - If the cheque batch refers to Accounts Payable cheques

Cash Management - If the cheque batch refers to Cash Management cheques

#### Reason Code

Enter a reason for the omission.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Cheque Reason Code pop-up.

### **Cheque Number From/To**

Enter the cheque number(s) to be omitted. To omit a single cheque, enter its number in the From field only. If the cheques specified are in use, they must all be from the same batch.

### **Date**

Enter or select the date on which the cheques were generated.

Select **Update** (F8) to perform the update.

# Maintain Discount Codes [13/CSM]

This task enables you to define a schedule of early settlement discounts for any document: the earlier the settlement, the greater the discount percentage.

The schedule can then be used by either the Accounts Payable or Accounts Receivable module.

# Maintain Settlement Discount Codes Selection Window

To display this window, select the **Discount Codes** task.

#### Fields

### **Discount Code**

Enter a discount code.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Discount Code pop-up.

Enter a new or existing discount code and Press Enter to display the Maintain Settlement <u>Discount</u> <u>Codes</u> window.

# Maintain Settlement Discount Codes Window

To display this window, enter a new or existing discount code and Press Enter on the Maintain Settlement Discount Codes Selection window.

Use this window to define the schedule of early settlement discounts.

## **Fields**

# **Days or Periods**

Enter either:

The number of days to be added to the document date in order to calculate the discount date

Or:

The discount date, in month/date form

This method works in the same way as the third <u>Payment Terms</u> field, meaning that the first digit is the number of months after the document date, while the second and third digits form the date in that month. Thus for an invoice with a document date of 3/10/07, an entry here of 125 would mean a discount date of 25/11/07. This field depends on the setting of the Calculation Basis field.

#### Disc %

Enter the percentage discount to be allowed for payment within the corresponding discount date.

# **Description**

Enter a description for the settlement discount code.

#### **Calculation Basis**

Select one of the following:

Days - If the calculation of the discount date is to be based on days

Periods - If the calculation of the discount date is to be based on periods/months

# **Lead Days**

You can optionally enter the number of days between the production of a payment and its receipt by your supplier, if you want this to be taken into account when calculating discount and <u>due</u> <u>dates</u>.

This value is used only for Accounts Payable payments.

# **Functions**

#### Delete (F11)

Use this to delete an existing discount code.

Select **Update** (F8) to perform the update.

# Maintain CS Standard Distributions [14/CSM]

This task enables the system to enter General <u>Ledger dissections</u> automatically when making a CS miscellaneous payment or journal posting.

First, define any commonly used pattern of <u>dissections</u> as a code. This code is then entered when processing miscellaneous payments, journal payments or journal receipts to provide the <u>dissections</u> automatically during posting, but these can be amended before the payment/receipt is posted.

# Maintain CS Standard Distributions window

To display this window, select the CS Standard Distribution task.

Either, select a template to maintain. Its details will be transferred to the fields at the bottom of the window, where they can be amended.

Or enter a new template using the fields at the bottom of the window

#### **Fields**

#### Distribution ref

Enter a code for the standard distribution.

### **Description**

Enter the standard distribution description.

# Distribution type

Select one of the following:

Standing - For a standing type (2)

Spread - For a spread type (3)

#### Control value

This field will be used only for a distribution type of Spread. Enter the value.

### **Inter Co**

Check this field if distribution postings are to be made across General Ledger companies.

#### **Options**

### Select (1)

Use this to maintain a CS standard distribution

# Delete (4)

Use this to this delete a CS standard distribution

Press Enter to display the Maintain CS Standard Distribution Details window

# Maintain CS Standard Distribution Details Window

To display this window, press Enter on the Maintain Distribution Templates window.

Use this window to select a distribution line for amendment or deletion.

#### **Fields**

#### I/C

If posting is required to a General <u>Ledger</u> company other than the current one, enter that company here.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Inter-company Company pop-up.

#### **Account Code**

Enter the General Ledger account.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Account pop-up.

#### Value

Enter a value. Note that if defining a spread profile, the values entered here are taken to be a ratio, not an actual value.

#### **Desc**

Enter a description as required. If this field is left blank, it will <u>default</u> to the short description on the chart of accounts.

# **Options**

#### Select (1)

Use this to select a line for amendment.

#### Delete (4)

Use this to delete a line.

# **Functions**

## **Delete Whole Distribution (F11)**

Use this to delete all the distribution details

# More Detail/Less Detail (F22)

Use this to toggle the display between more detail and less detail of each entry.

Press Accept (F8) to update the details

# Report on Bank Accounts [31/CSM]

Select the Report on Bank Accounts task.

Use this task to produce a report listing all the <u>bank accounts</u> defined to Cash Management in full detail and in alphabetical order.

There are no <u>parameters</u> for this task and no confirmation window. You will be informed that a batch job has been submitted.

# Report on Bank Names & Addresses [32/CSM]

Select the Report on Bank Names & Addresses task.

Use this task to produce a report listing all the bank branches defined to Cash Management with their addresses, <u>country codes</u>, and in alphabetical order.

There are no <u>parameters</u> for this task and no confirmation window. You will be informed that a batch job has been submitted.

# Report on Parameters [33/CSM]

Select the Report on Parameters task.

Use this task to produce a report listing all the <u>parameters</u> defined to Cash Management, in sub-type within major type order and with other details.

Select Confirm Submit (F8) to submit the batch job to produce the report.

# Report on Period End Calendar [34/CSM]

Select the Report on Period End Calendar task.

Use this task to produce a report listing all the <u>period</u> dates entered in the Cash Management calendar.

Select Confirm Submit (F8) to submit the batch job to produce the report.

# Report on Sundry Creditors [35/CSM]

Select the Report on Sundry Creditors task.

Use this task to produce a report listing miscellaneous creditors.

Select Confirm Submit (F8) to submit the batch job to produce the report.

# Report on Extended Terms [36/CSM]

Select the Report on Extended Terms Listing task.

Use this task to produce a report listing all the <u>extended terms</u> codes defined to Cash Management. This report prints all the details, including the ratios and the <u>payment terms</u>.

Select Confirm Submit (F8) to submit the batch job to produce the report.

# Report on Payment Methods [37/CSM]

Select the Report on Payment Methods task.

Use this task to produce a report listing all the <u>payment methods</u> defined to Cash Management. This report includes all the details for each method including the <u>bank account</u> format and credit card validation details.

Select Confirm Submit (F8) to submit the batch job to produce the report.

# Report on Cash Apportionment Table [38/CSM]

Select the Report on Cash Apportionment Table task.

Use this task to produce a report listing the details of all the <u>cash apportionment</u> tables defined to Cash Management.

Select Confirm Submit (F8) to submit the batch job to produce the report.

# Report on External Bank Details [39/CSM]

Use this task to produce a report listing the details of all the bank codes and addresses defined to the company specified.

# External Bank Details Listing Window

To display this window, select the Report on External Bank Details task.

#### **Fields**

## Company

Enter the company for which you want to produce the report.

Enter the required company and Press Enter. Then select **Proceed (F8)** to submit the job.

# Report on Interest & Commission Charges [40/CSM]

Select the Report on Interest & Commission Charges task.

Use this task to produce a report listing the details of all the <u>interest and commission</u> charges set up within Cash Management.

Select Confirm Submit (F8) to submit the batch job to produce the report.

# Cheque Register [41/CSM]

Use this task to produce a cheque register, showing date, payee name and <u>account code</u>, and reason code.

# Cheque Register Selection Window

To display this window, select the Cheque Register task.

Use this window to select the range of cheques you want to print.

#### **Fields**

#### **Bank Account**

Enter an existing bank account.

Alternatively, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Select <u>Bank Account</u> pop-up.

This field <u>defaults</u> to the Cash Management <u>company profile default</u> account.

## **Cheque Source**

Select one of the following:

Accounts Payable - To print Accounts Payable cheque details

Cash Management - To print Cash Management cheque details

# Cheque Number From/To

Enter the range of cheques to be included on the report.

Leave these fields blank to select all cheques for the bank account.

These fields cannot be used if a batch is specified.

### Or Batch

Enter the batch for which details are to be printed.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Cheque Batch Selection pop-up.

This field cannot be used if a range of cheque numbers is entered.

#### Reason Code

Enter a <u>reason code</u>. The report will exclude all cheques with a different <u>reason code</u>.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Cheque Reason Code pop-up.

Leave this field blank to select all reason codes.

Select **Confirm (F8)** to submit a job to produce a report listing all the cheques within the selected range in cheque number sequence.

## Chapter 3 Processing

The tasks available in Cash Management Processing manage the cash resources of the company. Cash is posted to this module as a result of actions in other applications, or posted directly within Cash Management itself.

## Cash Postings in other Applications

Use the following processing tasks to post <u>transactions</u> to <u>bank accounts</u>, which is a requirement because <u>bank accounts</u> are post inhibited to GL journals. A GL account enquiry will reveal that accounts defined as <u>bank accounts</u> in Cash Management are post inhibited.

#### **Supplier Payments**

When Cash Management is installed, the Accounts Payable payment cycle has distinct phases:

- The selection of <u>items</u> to be paid is carried out in Accounts Payable.
- Selection is confirmed.
- These <u>items</u> are passed to Cash Management for payment.

#### **Customer Receipts**

- Accounts Receivable cash is first posted to the <u>bank accounts</u> as provisional or direct cash.
- Provisional cash is confirmed.
- It is posted to the Accounts Receivable account for allocation to <u>outstanding items</u>.

#### **Currency Revaluation**

<u>Bank accounts</u> may be held in a currency other than the General <u>Ledger base currency</u>. You can revalue them into the <u>base currency</u> at the current <u>exchange rate</u>. Post any gain or loss into a realised currency variance account.

### Cash Postings within Cash Management

**Miscellaneous Creditors** 

Where suppliers are not paid through Accounts Payable, they may be paid through a <u>Miscellaneous</u> <u>Creditors</u> task.

#### **Cash Journals**

Cash journals enable you to record cash payments and receipts that are not associated with Accounts Payable or Receivable, and which are not dealt with by <u>miscellaneous creditors</u>.

#### Bank to Bank Transfer

You may transfer cash between any two bank accounts in any currency.

#### **Item** Cancellation

It is occasionally necessary to cancel a cash <u>transaction</u> which has previously been posted. The General <u>Ledger</u> accounts are adjusted accordingly.

#### Post Suspended Items

These <u>items</u> are cash received or payments made in a currency different from the currency of the <u>bank account</u> out of which it is paid is suspended.

This task transfers the value from suspense to the <u>bank account</u>, and accounts for exchange gains/losses and for bank charges.

#### **Bank Reconciliation**

This task is used for reconciling your cash balances with the statement supplied by your bank.

### **Opening Balances**

Refer to the Initialise Bank Balances section in the <u>Utilities</u> chapter of this product guide for an explanation of the way in which opening balances may be posted to your <u>bank account</u>.

## Supplier Payments [1/CSP]

Once a run of payments has been prepared in Accounts Payable, it must be released before the payments will be made. This task enables you to release all available runs, a process that will update Accounts Payable, make postings to the General <u>Ledger</u> and produce the necessary documentation.

Various amendments may be made to the run before release.

The provision of sending Accounts Payable remittance advices to a third party is Work Management enabled and controlled. The subsequent notification of follow-up action is controlled by a Work Management active process.

This means that for each completed supplier payment and/or payment reference, notification should be sent to advise that a new document exists. This includes the payment reference number/advice note number. This provides the ability to send remittances either manually, or by electronic means.

The process will require amending to send a message via an action list to the person responsible for deciding how the remittance advices will be actioned. The message will be cleared once the person responsible has processed the action.

For further information, refer to the Work Management chapters in the Application Manager Product Guide for details on Work Management <u>parameters</u> in the System21 tasks.

For <u>payment methods</u> requiring bank details, Release Supplier Payments will validate that an appropriate <u>bank account</u> exists for the supplier based upon the <u>payment method</u> and <u>currency code</u> of the payment.

It will display an error message if one does not. If this occurs it will be necessary to define a suitable bank account for the supplier through either Supplier maintenance (1/APM) or External Bank Details (9/CSM) before the payment can be released.

### Release Supplier Payments Window

To display this window, select the **Supplier Payments** task.

This window displays a list of payment runs.

#### **Options**

#### **Select Payment Run**

Use this to select the run for which payments are to be released.

#### **Functions**

#### Select All (F17)

Use this to select all payment runs for processing.

Select a run for release of payments (or select **Select All (F17)** to release payments from all runs) to display the Release Outstanding Supplier Payments window.

## Release Outstanding Supplier Payments Window

To display this window, select a run for which payments are to be released, or select **Select All** (**F17**) to release all runs, on the Release Supplier Payments window.

All the payments for the selected run, or for all runs if **Select All (F17)** was selected, are listed here, in run date order.

#### **Fields**

#### Select (Untitled)

Select More Options (F23) to see options not currently displayed.

Enter one of the following:

- 1 To select a run
- 2/3 To select a range of runs
- 4 To ignore a run within a selected range
- 5 To cancel any rate changes made
- 6 To change a payment currency
- 7 or 8 To change currency rates as shown on the window
- A Select A to show a window to enter a supplier payment reference

#### P/M

You can optionally enter a new payment method.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Payment Method pop-up.

#### **Date**

Enter or select the date to be printed on the documentation produced.

This field <u>defaults</u> to the current date.

#### Post to Default Period

Use this checkbox as follows:

Unchecked - To display a pop-up which will allow you to specify a posting <u>period</u> as below (when **Make Payments (F8)** is selected)

Checked - To use the <u>default</u> <u>period</u>

#### **Pay From**

If you want to pay from a different bank account to the default account, enter that account.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Bank Account pop-up.

#### Description

If your payments are to be made by collection document, enter a document description.

#### **Functions**

#### Value Date (F15)

Use this to enter a value date to take effect when the <u>session</u> is completed and posted. The date entered will override the date calculated by the value dates table.

This will only be available if the Country-specific <u>Parameter</u> Value Dates Active is set to 2. See the Supplier Receipts section for more information on value date entry.

#### Select All (F17)

Use this to select all payments for release.

#### Override New Bank to Base Rate (F18)

Use this to amend the bank to base currency rate.

#### More Options (F23)

Use this to display more of the options available for line processing.

Press Enter and then select **Make Payments (F8)** to release the selected payments and perform any other updates you have chosen to make.

## Override Default Posting Period Pop Up

This window is displayed when you have selected lines for payment and **Post to Default Period** is **unchecked**.

#### **Fields**

**Default Posting Period** 

Enter the posting period required

Select Confirm (F8) to confirm the chosen period.

# Enter Supplier Reference

This is used to enter a supplier reference for a selected supplier payment.

The entry of this reference will be appropriate where prepayments are being made and in this case, will be the agreement/contract number which allows the linking of prepayments to invoices/orders

Where Russian localization is in use, the prepayment on account cash is posted to:

- Debit AP On account prepayment account
- Credit AP account bank account

# Supplier Receipts [2/CSP]

This task is used to record the receipt of a payment from a supplier against the <u>bank account</u> concerned, and to allocate it to the correct supplier in Accounts Payable.

# Receipts Initial Window

To display this window, select the **Supplier Receipts** task.

Use this window to specify the company and supplier from which payment is requested.

#### **Fields**

#### P/L Company

Enter the Accounts Payable company in which the supplier is held.

This field defaults to the Cash Management company.

#### **Supplier Code**

Specify the supplier account from which payment has been requested.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Supplier Selection pop-up.

Enter the company and supplier code and Press Enter to display the Supplier Receipts window.

## Supplier Receipts Window

To display this window, enter a company and <u>supplier code</u> on the Receipts Initial window and Press Enter.

#### <u>Fields</u>

#### **Amount**

Enter the value of the receipt, in the prime (transaction) currency.

#### Currency

Enter the currency in which the supplier has made payment.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Currency pop-up.

#### **Bank Account**

Enter the General <u>Ledger bank account</u> into which the payment has been received. Its currency may be different from the receipt currency.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Bank Account pop-up.

#### **Period Number**

Enter the accounting period to which the receipt will be posted.

#### **Charges Account**

Enter the General Ledger account to which any bank charges are debited.

Alternatively, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Select Charge Account pop-up.

#### Charges

Enter the value of any bank charges in the <u>bank account</u> currency. The value is deducted from the converted receipt value to give a net receipt.

#### **Bank Reference**

Enter the appropriate reference. This reference is used by bank reconciliation to group receipts together on the G/L bank statement.

**Note**: The <u>bank reference</u> is printed on the transfer document and passed to the bank so that it can be quoted on bank statements, thus making Bank <u>Statement Reconciliation</u> easier.

#### **Date**

The <u>transaction</u> date <u>defaults</u> to the current date, but may be changed.

#### **Payment Method**

The <u>default</u> for this field is the <u>default payment method</u> from the Accounts Payable <u>company</u> <u>profile</u>.

You can optionally enter any existing payment method.

Alternatively, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Select <u>Payment Method</u> pop-up.

#### Reason Code

You can optionally enter any valid reason code.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Reason Code pop-up.

#### **Functions**

#### Value Date (F15)

Use this to calculate the value date from the value dates table. The Value Date Entry pop-up is displayed.

#### Override Bank Rate (F16)

Use this to amend the currency rate. The Currency Conversion pop-up is displayed.

#### Override Receipt Rate (F17)

Use this to amend the currency rate. The Currency Conversion pop-up is displayed.

Select **Accept (F8)** to accept the receipt or select one of the available functions to display the next window or pop-up.

## Value Date Entry Pop-up

To display this pop-up, select Value Date (F15) on the Supplier Receipts window.

Note: This pop-up is displayed if the Country-specific Parameter Value Dates Active is set to 2.

This pop-up allows you to calculate the value date from the value dates table. (See the Maintain Value Dates Tables section.) Enter the location of the bank and overwrite any displayed date. The value date will take effect when the <u>session</u> is completed and posted.

#### **Fields**

#### Days Type

Select one of the following:

In place - If the bank is situated locally

Out of place - If the bank is situated in the same country but a different town

International - If the bank is in a different country

In each case, an appropriate number of days will be added to clearing.

#### **Value Date**

The system calculates a recommended date, which displays here. You can change this as required.

#### **Functions**

#### Calculate (F14)

Use this to calculate the value date and add the appropriate number of days from the value date table.

When the required date has been entered or calculated, selected Update (F8) to accept it.

## Override Conversion Parameters Pop-up

To display this pop-up, select either **Override Bank Rate (F16)** or **Override Receipt Rate (F17)** on the Supplier Receipts window.

Use this pop-up to override the <u>default</u> currency conversion rate.

#### **Fields**

#### Rate Code

Enter the <u>rate code</u> you want to use for the conversion.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Rate Code pop-up.

#### Rate

If no appropriate <u>rate code</u> exists, enter the rate which you want to use for the conversion.

If this field is used, a value must be entered in the Multiply or Divide field.

#### **Multiply or Divide**

If this field is used, a value must be entered in the Rate field.

Enter one of the following:

Multiply - To multiply the values held in the source currency by the <u>exchange rate</u> to achieve the target currency value

Divide - To divide the values held in the source currency by the <u>exchange rate</u> to achieve the target currency values

**Note**: For Euro conversion, the system holds Euro/target fixed rates.

**Note**: For guidance on when to select Multiply or Divide in a Euro IN/OUT OUT/IN situation see the Eurocurrency: Phase 1: Illustration of Conversions section.

#### **Target Currency Value**

If you prefer to enter the target value instead of a rate, enter that value here.

When you select **Enter**, you will see the new rate applied to the converted currencies.

Enter the receipt and select **Accept (F8)** to update. The initial window is re-displayed with the receipt details.

# Miscellaneous Payments [11/CSP]

This task enables you to make a payment to a <u>miscellaneous creditor</u> (a supplier who is not defined to Accounts Payable).

## Miscellaneous Payments Payee Window

To display this window, select the **Miscellaneous Payments** task.

Enter details of the payee, <u>payment method</u> and <u>reason code</u>. Add a narrative if required.

#### **Fields**

#### Payee Code

Enter the payee code of a <u>miscellaneous creditor</u>. This can be left blank if the payee name is entered instead.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Miscellaneous Creditor pop-up.

Miscellaneous creditors are set up in the Maintain Sundry Creditors task.

### **Payee Name**

Enter the name of the miscellaneous creditor to be paid.

Miscellaneous creditors are set up via the Cash Management Maintenance tasks.

#### **Payee Address**

Enter or amend the payee address.

#### **Post Code**

Enter the postcode of the payee.

#### **Payment Method**

Enter the method by which you want to make the manual payment.

Alternatively, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Select <u>Payment Method</u> pop-up.

#### Reason Code

You can optionally enter a reason code for the raising of this manual payment.

Alternatively, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Select <u>Reason Code</u> pop-up.

#### **Narrative**

Enter text as necessary for reference.

Complete the required fields and Press Enter to display the Miscellaneous Payments Value window.

**Note**: If an electronic method of payment has been chosen, the Bank Detail pop-up will be displayed showing the bank details. This will vary depending on the <u>country code</u> and whether Country-specific <u>Parameter</u> 047 in the General <u>Ledger</u> has been set on. Electronic <u>payment methods</u> are payment types **Transfer**, **Electronic or <u>Collection Document</u>**, set up under Maintain <u>Payment Methods</u>. For the IBAN format to appear, the <u>Bank Account</u> format in this option should be set to **IBAN**.

## Miscellaneous Payments Value Window

To display this window, complete the required fields on the Miscellaneous Payments Payee window and Press Enter.

Use this window to enter full value and date details for the payment.

#### **Fields**

#### **Payment Value**

Enter the payment value.

#### **Payment Currency**

This field <u>defaults</u> to the <u>base currency</u>, but may be amended.

You can use the prompt facility to select from the Select Currency pop-up.

#### **Posting Period**

This field <u>defaults</u> to the current <u>period</u>, but may be amended.

#### **Payment Date**

This field defaults to the current date, but may be amended.

#### **Bank Account**

This field <u>defaults</u> to a specified account, but may be amended.

You can use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Select <u>Bank Account</u> pop-up.

#### **G/L Txn Description**

Enter a description to be attached to this posting in the General <u>Ledger</u>.

#### **Tax Content Type**

If the payment you are making involves tax, select **Purchase** here. (The entry of **Sales**, to indicate tax on a sale within a miscellaneous payment, will be a rare occurrence).

#### Inter-co Posting

Use this checkbox as follows:

Checked - If the payment is to be an inter-company posting

Unchecked - If the payment is not to be an inter-company posting

#### **Distribute**

Use this field to enter a distribution code that has been set up in Cash Management Maintenance as a standard distribution profile.

When displaying the <u>dissection</u> window, the General <u>Ledger</u> accounts specified for this distribution code will be entered automatically.

Depending on the type of distribution code, the gross value can also have been automatically spread over the accounts.

A prompt is available

#### **Functions**

#### Override Bank Rate (F17)

For currency journals, use this to override the exchange rate for the receipt.

#### Override Direct Rate (F18)

For currency journals, use this to override the direct exchange rate.

Complete the required fields and Press Enter to display the Miscellaneous Payments Item window.

### Miscellaneous Payments Item Window

To display this window, enter the required details on the Miscellaneous Payments Value window and Press Enter.

Use this window to enter details of the <u>dissection</u>. The total goods value displays for you to split as required. Amend the GL account, reference, tax code, description and quantity for the <u>dissection</u>.

#### **Fields**

#### Line

This field is used only when you want to amend a <u>dissection</u> line which appears in the list on this window. Enter the line number (from the Lne field) in this field and Press Enter. The <u>dissection</u> details will appear in the fields at the bottom of the window.

#### **Account**

If a <u>reason code</u> was entered, the General <u>Ledger</u> account defined to the <u>reason code</u> is displayed. This can be changed.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Account pop-up

#### Goods

This field <u>defaults</u> to the total value of the payment, but can be amended.

#### **Tax Code**

Enter a tax code for the <u>dissection</u> of the value being posted. Your entry depends on the way in which your system is set up.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Tax Code pop-up.

Entry of a valid code is only permitted if **Purchase** or **Sales** has been entered in tax Type.

If the GL account has a tax code assigned to it, that code must be used.

**Note**: Within the utility task Post Correcting Tax <u>Transaction</u>, any combination of tax code and GL Account may be entered. This task is available if GL Country-specific <u>Parameter</u> 031 is set to **2**.

Note: A tax code is assigned to a GL Account via the Accounts Maintenance task.

#### Tax Type

The tax code may be fixed for this account as blank, purchase or sales.

Select one of the following:

Purchase

Sales

However, where the combination of GL <u>Account Code</u> and a specific tax code is fixed, the tax type may also be fixed as purchase or sales tax.

**Note**: A fixed combination of GL Account with Tax and Type is created via Accounts Maintenance. Country-specific <u>Parameter</u> 031 is also relevant.

#### Tax

Enter the value of tax, in addition to the posting value.

#### **Date**

This field <u>defaults</u> to the current date, but may be changed. The date forms the tax point for tax analysis.

#### Quantity

You can optionally enter the quantity. If entered, the quantity will be recorded in the General <u>Ledger</u>.

#### **Line Desc**

Enter the description to appear on the General <u>Ledger transaction</u>. This <u>defaults</u> to any description entered on the previous window.

#### **Functions**

#### Cancel Trans (F13)

Use this to cancel this entry.

#### **Change Control (F17)**

Use this to return to the Miscellaneous Payments Value window to alter the payment amount.

#### A/C Extension (F22)

Use this to toggle between displaying the account extension code and the account description.

To enter another <u>dissection</u>, Press Enter. The one you have just entered will display at the top of the window, with the <u>dissection</u> fields left empty for new entries. Select **Update** (F8) to update the payment.

If the Value Date function is active (GL Country-specific <u>Parameter</u> 29 is set on), the Value Date Entry pop-up will be displayed at this point. For further information, see the Supplier Receipts section.

## Journal Payments [12/CSP]

This task enables you to record cash payments which are not associated with either Accounts Receivable or Accounts Payable, and which are not dealt with by <u>miscellaneous creditors</u>. This might include postings made to complete bank <u>statement reconciliation</u>, and so on.

## Journal Payments Payee Window

To display this window, select the Journal Payments task.

Use this window to enter full details of the journal payment including reference, payee name, payment method, reason code, values, currency, posting period, date and GL bank account.

#### **Fields**

#### **Payment Reference**

Enter a <u>transaction</u> reference. (The last reference displayed is not the <u>bank reference</u> but the Cash Management reference assigned to the <u>transactions</u>).

#### **Payee Name**

Enter the name of the payee.

#### **Payment Method**

Enter the method by which the payment is made or received. This must not be by <u>collection</u> <u>document</u>.

Alternatively, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Select <u>Payment Method</u> pop-up.

This field <u>defaults</u> to the <u>payment method</u> specified on the <u>company profile</u>.

#### Reason Code

Enter a <u>reason code</u> to be attached to the journal posting. The code may have a General <u>Ledger</u> account defined to it.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Reason Code pop-up.

#### **Payment Amount**

Enter the value of the payment or receipt in the <u>prime currency</u>. This must be a positive value; the type of journal determines the accounting treatment.

If you are using the <u>multi-currency</u> function, the current <u>rate code</u> and rate by which this value is converted into the General <u>Ledger base currency</u> is displayed. If you change the <u>currency code</u>, the new rate displayed. If the <u>transaction</u> is not in <u>base currency</u>, select **Override Payment Rate** (F17) to change the rate.

#### **Payment Currency**

This field <u>defaults</u> to the currency of the <u>default bank account</u> on the <u>company profile</u>. Any other currency entered must be on the currency file.

You can use the prompt facility to select from the Select Currency pop-up.

#### **Posting Period**

This field <u>defaults</u> to the <u>period</u> on the Cash Management <u>company profile</u>, but any future <u>period</u> may be entered.

#### **Payment Date**

This field <u>defaults</u> to the current date, but may be amended.

#### **Bank Account**

Enter the General Ledger bank account.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Bank Account pop-up.

This field <u>defaults</u> to the account specified on the <u>company profile</u>.

#### **G/L Txn Description**

You can optionally enter a description which will be included in the <u>transaction</u> posted to the General <u>Ledger</u>.

#### **Tax Content Type**

If the payment you are dealing with involves tax, select one of the following:

**Purchases** 

Sales

#### Inter-company Posting

Use this checkbox as follows:

Checked - If the journal is to be an inter-company posting

Unchecked - If the journal is not to be an inter-company posting

#### **Distribute**

Use this field to enter a distribution code that has been set up in Cash Management Maintenance as a standard distribution profile.

When displaying the <u>dissection</u> window, the General <u>Ledger</u> accounts specified for this distribution code will be entered automatically.

Depending on the type of distribution code, the gross value can also have been automatically spread over the accounts.

A prompt is available

#### **Functions**

#### Override Payment Rate (F17)

For currency journals, use this to override the exchange rate for the receipt.

#### Override Direct Rate (F18)

For currency journals, use this to override the direct exchange rate.

Enter the payment details and Press Enter to display the Journal Payments <u>Dissections</u> window.

### Journal Payments Dissections Window

To display this window, enter the payment details on the Journal Payments Payee window and Press Enter.

Use this window to enter or amend dissection lines on a journal payment.

#### Fields

#### Line

This field is used only when you want to amend a <u>dissection</u> line which appears in the list on this window. Enter the line number (from the Lne field) in this field and Press Enter. The <u>dissection</u> details will appear in the fields at the bottom of the window.

#### Account

If a <u>reason code</u> was entered, the General <u>Ledger</u> account defined to the <u>reason code</u> is displayed, but can be changed.

You can use the prompt facility to select from the Select Account pop-up.

#### Goods

This field <u>defaults</u> to the total value of the payment, but can be amended.

#### Tax Code

Enter a tax code for the dissection.

Alternatively, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Select Tax Code pop-up.

If the GL account has a tax code assigned to it, that code must be used.

Note: A tax code is assigned to a GL Account via the Accounts Maintenance task.

#### Tax Type

The tax code may be fixed for this account as either purchase or sales.

Select one of the following:

Purchase

Sales

**Note**: Tax on the GL Account is set up as Purchase, Sales or Either in the Accounts Maintenance task.

#### Tax

Enter the value of tax, in addition to the posting value.

#### **Date**

This field <u>defaults</u> to the current date, but may be changed to any date. The date forms the tax point for tax analysis.

#### Quantity

You can optionally enter the quantity if required. If entered, the quantity will be recorded in the General <u>Ledger</u>.

#### **Line Desc**

Enter the description to appear on the General <u>Ledger transaction</u>. It <u>defaults</u> to any description entered on the Journal Payments Payee window.

#### **Functions**

#### Cancel Trans (F13)

Use this to cancel this entry.

#### **Change Control (F17)**

Use this to return to the Journal Payments Payee window to alter the payment amount.

#### A/C Extension (F22)

Use this to toggle between displaying the account extension code and the account description.

To enter another <u>dissection</u>, Press Enter. The one you have just entered will display at the top of the window, with the <u>dissection</u> fields left empty for new entries. Select **Update (F8)** to update the payment.

If the Value Date function is active (GL Country-specific <u>Parameter</u> 29 is set on), the Value Date Entry pop-up will be displayed at this point. For further information, see the Supplier Receipts section.

# Journal Receipts [13/CSP]

This task enables you to record cash receipts which are not associated with either Accounts Receivable or Accounts Payable, and which are not dealt with by <u>miscellaneous creditors</u>. This might include postings made to complete bank <u>statement reconciliation</u>, and so on.

### Journal Receipts Window

To display this window, select the Journal Receipts task.

Use this window to enter the value and reference details of the journal receipt.

#### **Fields**

#### Receipt Reference

Enter a <u>transaction</u> reference. (The last reference displayed is not the <u>bank reference</u> but the Cash Management reference assigned to the <u>transactions</u>).

#### **Client Name**

Enter any descriptive information about the <u>transaction</u>.

#### Reason Code

Enter a <u>reason code</u> to be attached to the journal posting. The code may have a General <u>Ledger</u> account defined to it.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Reason Code pop-up.

#### **Payment Method**

You must specify the method by which the payment is made or received. This must not be by collection document.

This field defaults to the default payment method on the Cash Management company profile.

You can use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Select <u>Payment Method</u> pop-up.

#### **Receipt Value**

Enter the value of the receipt, in the <u>prime currency</u>. This value must be positive. The type of journal determines the accounting treatment.

The current <u>rate code</u> and rate by which this value is converted into the General <u>Ledger base currency</u> is displayed. If you change the <u>currency code</u>, the new rate is displayed. If the transaction is not in base currency, select **Override Receipt Rate (F17)** to change the rate.

#### **Receipt Currency**

This field <u>defaults</u> to the currency of the <u>default bank account</u> on the <u>company profile</u>. Any other currency entered must be on the currency file.

You can use the prompt facility to select from the Select Currency pop-up.

#### **Posting Period**

This field <u>defaults</u> to the <u>period</u> on the Cash Management <u>company profile</u>, but any future <u>period</u> may be entered.

#### **Receipt Date**

This field <u>defaults</u> to the current date, but may be amended.

#### **Bank Account**

Enter the General Ledger bank account.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Bank Account pop-up.

The field defaults to the account on the company profile.

#### **G/L Txn Description**

You can optionally enter a description which will be included in the <u>transaction</u> posted to the General <u>Ledger</u>.

#### Tax Content Type

If the payment or receipt involves tax, select one of the following:

Purchase

Sales

#### **Inter-company Posting**

Use this checkbox as follows:

Unchecked - If there is to be no inter-company posting

Checked - If there is to be an inter-company posting

#### **Distribute**

Use this field to enter a distribution code that has been set up in Cash Management Maintenance as a standard distribution profile.

When displaying the <u>dissection</u> window, the General <u>Ledger</u> accounts specified for this distribution code will be entered automatically.

Depending on the type of distribution code, the gross value can also have been automatically spread over the accounts.

A prompt is available

#### **Functions**

#### Override Receipt Rate (F17)

For currency journals, use this to override the exchange rate for the receipt.

#### Override Direct Rate (F18)

For currency journals, use this to override the direct exchange rate.

Enter the receipt details and Press Enter to display the Journal Receipts Dissection window.

### Journal Receipts Dissections Window

To display this window, enter the receipt details on the Journal Receipts window and Press Enter.

Use this window to select a journal receipt line for dissection or add full dissection details.

#### **Fields**

#### Line

This field is used only when you want to amend a <u>dissection</u> line which appears in the list on this window. Enter the line number (from the Lne field) in this field and Press Enter. The <u>dissection</u> details will appear in the fields at the bottom of the window.

#### Account

If a <u>reason code</u> was entered, the General <u>Ledger</u> account defined to the <u>reason code</u> is displayed, but can be changed.

You can use the prompt facility to select from the Select Account pop-up.

#### Goods

This field <u>defaults</u> to the total value of the payment, but can be amended.

#### Tax Code

Enter a tax code for the dissection.

If the GL account has a tax code assigned to it, that code must be used.

You can use the prompt facility to select from the Select Tax Code pop-up.

Note: A tax code is assigned to a GL Account via the Accounts Maintenance task.

#### Tax Type

The tax code may be fixed for this account as either purchase or sales.

Select one of the following:

Purchase

Sales

**Note**: Tax on the GL Account is set up as Purchase, Sales or Either in the Accounts Maintenance task.

#### Tax

Enter the value of tax, in addition to the posting value.

#### **Date**

This field <u>defaults</u> to the current date, but may be changed to any date. The date forms the tax point for tax analysis.

#### Quantity

You can optionally enter the quantity. If a quantity is entered, it will be recorded in the General Ledger.

#### **Line Desc**

Enter the description to appear on the General <u>Ledger transaction</u>. This <u>defaults</u> to any description entered on the Journal Receipts window.

#### **Functions**

#### Cancel Trans (F13)

Use this to cancel this entry.

#### **Change Control (F17)**

Use this to return to the Journal Receipts window to alter the payment amount.

#### A/C Extension (F22)

Use this to toggle between displaying the account extension code and the account description.

To enter another <u>dissection</u>, Press Enter. The one you have just entered will display at the top of the window, with the <u>dissection</u> fields left empty for new entries. Select **Update (F8)** to update the payment.

If the Value Date function is active (GL Country-specific <u>Parameter</u> 29 is set on), the Value Date Entry pop-up will be displayed at this point. For further information, see the Supplier Receipts section.

# Bank to Bank Transfers [14/CSP]

This task enables you to transfer money between any two <u>bank accounts</u> within this Cash Management company. These <u>bank accounts</u> need not be in the same currency.

### Bank to Bank Transfer Window

To display this window, select the **Bank to Bank Transfers** task.

Use this window to enter full details of the bank to bank transfer.

#### **Fields**

#### **Transfer Description**

Enter a description to identify this transfer.

#### **Payment Details**

#### **Bank Account**

Enter the General <u>Ledger</u> account from which the transfer is being made. The currency will display when the <u>transaction</u> is validated.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Bank Account pop-up.

#### **Transfer Reference**

Enter a reference for this transfer on the payment side.

#### **Net Value**

Enter the <u>transaction</u> value in the currency of the <u>bank account</u>, excluding any charges applied by the transferring <u>bank account</u>.

#### Charges

Enter the value of any bank charges, in the currency of the <u>bank account</u>. The net value transferred is calculated and displayed.

#### **Receipt Details**

#### **Bank Account**

Enter the General <u>Ledger bank account</u> to receive the transfer. It cannot be the same account as the payment account.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Bank Account pop-up.

The description of the currency will also display.

#### **Transfer Reference**

Enter a reference for this transfer on the receipt side.

#### **Total Receipt**

Enter the total value in the currency of the receiving bank, if known, including any charges applied by the receiving bank.

#### Charges

Enter the value of any bank charges, in the currency of the receiving <u>bank account</u>. The value transferred is calculated and displayed.

#### **Posting Period**

This field <u>defaults</u> to the <u>period</u> on Cash Management <u>company profile</u>, but it can be amended.

#### **Accounting Date**

Enter or select the calendar date of the transfer.

This field <u>defaults</u> to the current date.

#### Inter-company

Enter a company code if this is an inter-company transfer.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Company pop-up.

#### **Payment Method**

If you are using value dates (set up in Country-specific <u>Parameters</u> in the General <u>Ledger</u> <u>Utilities</u> tasks), you must enter the <u>payment method</u> here.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Payment Method pop-up.

If the Value Date function is active (GL Country-specific <u>Parameter</u> 29 is set on), when you select **Update (F8)**, the From Bank Value Date Entry pop-up will be displayed for you to enter the payment <u>bank account</u> date.

If the Value Date function is active (GL Country-specific <u>Parameter</u> 29 is set on), when you Press Enter, the To Bank Value Date Entry pop-up is displayed for you to enter the receipt <u>bank</u> account date.

#### **Functions**

#### Select Target Cash Book (F10)

Use this to transfer to a different company from the one you are currently using. The Select Cash Management pop-up is displayed, listing available companies. Select the company you want to use as the target company.

#### Receipt Bank to Base (F16)

Use this to display the Override Conversion <u>Parameters</u> pop-up. You can then override the <u>exchange rate</u> for the displayed currency with a new rate.

#### Payment Bank to Receipt Bank (F17)

Use this to display the Override Conversion <u>Parameters</u> pop-up. You can then override the <u>exchange rate</u> for the displayed currency with a new rate.

#### Payment Bank to Receipt Bank (F18)

Use this to display the Override Conversion <u>Parameters</u> pop-up. You can then override the <u>exchange rate</u> for the displayed currency with a new rate.

**Note**: Where the source and target currencies are both Euro currencies, no override is permitted.

Enter the values as required and select **Update** (F8) to update.

## Post from Suspense [15/CSP]

Any Cash Management <u>transaction</u> whose currency is different from the currency of the <u>bank</u> <u>account</u> to which it is posted is suspended.

Variance and charges on a <u>transaction</u> are not usually known at the time of making the payment. The <u>transaction</u> may therefore be posted to a suspense account defined on the <u>bank account</u>. The <u>transaction</u> will then be posted from suspense to the <u>bank account</u>, giving you the opportunity to post any charge or variance at the same time.

The transactions that can be suspended are:

- Customer receipts in Accounts Receivable
- Supplier payments in Accounts Payable
- <u>Miscellaneous creditor</u> payments
- Bank transactions in Cash Management

### Post from Suspense Selection Window

To display this window, select the **Post from Suspense** task.

Use this window to select the suspended transaction.

#### <u>Fields</u>

#### **Bank Account**

Enter the General Ledger bank account code.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Bank Account pop-up.

If an account is entered here, the Cash Book Reference field must be left blank.

#### **Cash Book Reference**

Enter the Cash Management reference, if known, of the transaction that has been suspended.

If a reference is entered here, the Bank Account field must be left blank.

If you enter a <u>bank account</u> and Press Enter, the Post from Suspense window displays a list of postings for that account. If you enter a Cash Management reference and Press Enter, the Post from Accounts window is displayed.

### Post from Suspense Window

To display this window, enter an account number on the Post from Suspense Selection window and Press Enter.

This window displays a list of postings for that account, from which you can select those to be posted from suspense.

#### <u>Fields</u>

Select (1)

Enter 1 to select the Cash Management references to be posted from suspense.

Select a reference or multiple references and then select **Process Selected** <u>Items</u> (F8) to display the Post from Accounts window for each selection in turn.

### Post from Accounts Window

To display this window, enter a Cash Management reference on the Post from Suspense Selection window and Press Enter or select a reference or multiple references on the Post from Suspense window and then select **Process Selected** Items (F8).

This window is displayed for each selection in turn.

#### **Fields**

#### **Bank Account**

<u>Default</u> General <u>Ledger</u> accounts are displayed with their descriptions. You may change, add or delete accounts.

#### **Amount**

Enter the value for the <u>bank account</u> and any charges, profit or loss on exchange or other General <u>Ledger</u> postings applicable to the <u>transaction</u>.

Values are generally entered with the same sign as the suspended value, and must total the suspended value. General <u>Ledger</u> credits are entered as negative values.

#### Chg

Any bank charges are indicated with **1** in this column. **1** may be entered against any GL account, and this will be <u>flagged</u> on the <u>bank account</u> records.

#### **Posting Date**

Enter the date of the <u>transaction</u>. This <u>defaults</u> to the system date.

#### **Posting Period**

This <u>defaults</u> to the current Cash Management <u>period</u>.

Make any amendments as required and then Press Enter to review the next selection (if there is one). Select **Ignore this Record (F12)** to move on to the next selection without amending the current one.

## Process External Receipts [24/CSP]

Batches of cash receipts and payment advices with remittances (where included) received via <u>Lockbox</u> or other <u>EDI</u> transmissions are automatically posted using this task. Cash received is automatically allocated to customers/invoices.

This task will also allow for the posting of credit card transactions.

Outstanding <u>Lockbox</u> transmissions with a cash deposit date up to and including the system date will be selected for processing as follows:

- Cash receipts
- · Cash receipts with remittance details
- Payment advice
- Payment advice with remittance details

Each electronic <u>transaction</u> received contains your customer's bank details. The system will identify the paying customer from the customer's bank details, specifically from the <u>bank reference</u>. Where a customer cannot be identified, cash will be posted as unassigned.

### **Auto Cash Posting Window**

To display this window, select the **Process External Receipts** task.

Use this window to specify a discount date, or to indicate that all discounts are to be taken.

#### **Fields**

#### **Discount Date**

Enter an effective discount date. Discounts due on or after the selected date will be given.

#### **Take All Discounts**

Use this checkbox as follows:

Unchecked - If a Discount Date is entered

Checked - If the Discount Date is left blank and all discounts will be given regardless of the payment <u>due date</u> of the <u>items</u>

Press Enter to confirm your entries and then select **Submit Job** (F8) to process the batch job.

## Payments and Remittances [31/CSP]

This task is used to print the necessary documentation for manual payments. The documentation produced will depend on the <u>payment method</u> being used. Every method will produce a proof list <u>itemising</u> the payments made, but the following documents will be produced according to payment type:

- BACS Will produce a bank advice
- Transfer Will produce a bank transfer listing
- Cheque Will produce cheques

The job will process General <u>Ledger</u> postings for all payment types except cheques. Postings for cheques are not made until the cheque numbers have been allocated.

## **Payment Documentation Window**

To display this window, select the Payments and Remittances task.

#### **Fields**

#### **Bank Account Code**

Enter the bank <u>account code</u> for the documentation you want to print.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Bank Account pop-up.

#### **Payment Method**

Enter the <u>payment method</u> of the documentation you want to print. The method you choose must not be defined as a type of <u>collection document</u>.

Alternatively, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Select <u>Payment Method</u> pop-up.

Press Enter to validate your entries. If your entries are valid, a message will display to say that the printing can go ahead. Press Enter to print or select **Exit (F3)** to exit without printing.

# Confirm Cheque Numbers [32/CSP]

Before cheque payments are posted to the General <u>Ledger</u>, each cheque must be allocated a unique number. This task enables you to do this, and the job submitted will make the General <u>Ledger</u> postings.

### Allocate Cheque Numbers Option Window

To display this window, select the Confirm Cheque Numbers task.

Use this window to specify whether the cheques are for Accounts Payable payments or for Cash Management payments and then Press Enter to display the Bank Account Code field and specify the bank account.

#### **Fields**

#### Option

Select one of the following:

Accounts Payable Payments - To allocate cheques to Accounts Payable payments

Other Cash Payments - To allocate cheques to Cash Management payments

Press Enter to display the Allocate Cheque Numbers Bank Account window.

### Allocate Cheque Numbers Bank Account Window

To display this window, select an option and then Press Enter on the Allocate Cheque Numbers Option window.

#### **Fields**

#### **Bank Account**

Enter the bank account for which cheques are to have numbers allocated.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Bank Account pop-up.

Enter the bank account and then Press Enter to display the Allocate Cheque Numbers window.

### Allocate Cheque Numbers Window

To display this window, Press Enter on the Allocate Cheque Numbers Bank Account window.

This window lists cheques requiring numbers. Use this window to specify the number for each cheque.

#### **Fields**

#### **Cheque Number**

To allocate the cheque numbers, enter the first number used on the first payment. Press Enter and the following numbers will be entered automatically in order.

If for some reason there is a break in the sequence, go to the line in question, enter the first number of the new sequence, Press Enter, and again the numbers will be entered automatically from that point on.

The numbers entered must be in ascending order from top to bottom. The numbers are validated for uniqueness against all previous numbers used, including manual cheque numbers.

Select **Accept Allocated Cheque Numbers (F8)** to perform the update. A message will be displayed, telling you that the cheques are to be posted.

# Review/Cancel Unpaid Items [41/CSP]

Use this task to review payments that have not yet been made, and to cancel them as required.

### Review/Cancel Unpaid Items Selection Window

To display this window, select the **Review/Cancel Unpaid <u>Items</u>** task.

Use this window to specify the <u>bank account</u> and <u>payment method</u> of the payment or payments you want to review or cancel.

#### **Fields**

#### **Bank Account Code**

Enter the bank account for which you want to review or cancel payments.

Alternatively, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Select <u>Bank Account</u> pop-up.

#### **Payment Method**

Enter the <u>payment method</u> of the payments you want to review or cancel.

Alternatively, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Select <u>Payment Method</u> pop-up.

Press Enter to display the Review/Cancel Unpaid Items window.

### Review/Cancel Unpaid Items Window

To display this window, Press Enter on the Review/Cancel Unpaid Items Selection window.

Use this window to select an item to review or cancel.

#### **Fields**

#### Select (Sel)

Enter **1** against any payment you want to review or cancel and then Press Enter.

#### **Functions**

#### Cancel Selected Payments (F11)

Use this to cancel a payment. The Cash Management reference number relating to the payment will be deleted from the system.

Select Cancel Selected Payments (F11) to confirm the cancellation and exit the task.

# Cancel Transactions [42/CSP]

This task enables you to:

- Review an item
- De-allocate an item
- This involves restoring the <u>item</u> as an <u>open item</u>, and does not involve a posting to General <u>Ledger</u>.
- Cancel an <u>item</u>
- This involves a General <u>Ledger</u> posting.

Note. The ability to cancel or de-allocate a cash <u>transaction</u> which has been matched to a prepayment request has been disabled if on account postings have been created. The act of matching a prepayment results in General <u>Ledger transactions</u> not expected by the Cash Book reference cancellation process. If prepayment <u>transactions</u> need reversing this should be performed manually using the General <u>Ledger</u> journal processing function [1/GLP].

### Cancel Cash Item Selection Window

To display this window, select the **Cancel** <u>Transactions</u> task.

Use this window to specify the item you want to review, de-allocate or cancel.

#### **Fields**

#### Cash Reference

Enter the Cash Management reference of the required item.

If you do not know the reference, select **Page Up/Page Down** to display from the first <u>item</u> in the file.

Press Enter to display the details of the selected item on the Cancel Cash Item window.

### Cancel Cash Item Window

To display this window, enter a cash reference on the Cancel <u>Transactions</u> Selection window and Press Enter.

This window displays the details of the cash item selected.

#### **Fields**

#### **Next Reference**

You can either enter the next Cash Management reference in this field or select **Page Up/Page Down** to move through the references.

#### **Functions**

#### Cancel Item (F11)

This is only displayed for <u>items</u> that are available for cancellation. If you select this, the Cancellation Details pop-up is displayed.

#### Deallocate Item (F13)

This is only displayed for AR items that are available for de-allocation.

When you have selected the <u>item</u> you wish to cancel, select **Cancel** <u>Item</u> (F11) or **Deallocate** <u>Item</u> (F13). If you cancel AR <u>items</u>, the Cancellation Details pop-up is displayed.

If you de-allocate AR <u>items</u>, the Cancellation Details pop-up is also displayed. In this case, confirm the <u>period</u> and accounting date and Press Enter. The breakdown details for the payment are displayed, if there are any. If there are no breakdown details, a message to that effect is displayed. This may occur if there are no adjustments to the allocation.

## Cancellation Details Pop Up

To display this pop-up, select **Cancel** <u>Item</u> (F11) or **Deallocate** <u>Item</u> (F13) on the Cancel Cash <u>Item</u> window.

#### **Fields**

#### **Period**

This field <u>defaults</u> to the <u>period</u> to which the <u>transaction</u> to be cancelled was originally posted, but can be amended.

#### **Accounting Date**

Enter or select the accounting date

#### Include in Bank Reconciliation?

**Note:** This field is not displayed when you are de-allocating an <u>item</u>.

Use this checkbox as follows

Checked - To include the item in bank reconciliation

Unchecked - Not to include the item in bank reconciliation

#### Cancel bank charges

**Note:** This field is displayed when cancelling AR cash receipts. It is not shown when you are deallocating an item.

Use this checkbox as follows

Checked - To cancel bank charges

Unchecked - Not to cancel bank charges

Press Enter to proceed with cancellation.

For AR items, the Cancel Cheques window will be displayed.

For AP <u>items</u>, a Confirm Cancel pop-up is displayed. Select **Confirm Cancel (F11)** and then the Cancel Cheques window will be displayed.

### Cancel Cheques Window

To display this window, for AR <u>items</u>, Press Enter on the Cancellation Details pop-up. For AP <u>items</u>, select **Confirm Cancel (F11)** on the Confirm Cancel pop-up.

Select **Proceed if Details are Correct (F8)** to proceed with the cancellation. For AR <u>items</u>, the Cancel Payments window is displayed. For AP <u>items</u>, the cancellation is completed at this point.

## Cancel Payments Window

To display this window, select Proceed if Details are Correct (F8) on the Cancel Cheques window.

This window displays the details of the cash item selected.

#### **Functions**

#### Deallocate Item (F13)

This is only displayed for AR <u>items</u> that are available for de-allocation. If you select this, the Cancellation Details pop-up is displayed. Confirm the <u>period</u> and accounting date and Press Enter. The breakdown details for the payment are displayed, if there are any. If there are no breakdown details, a message to that effect is displayed. This may occur if there are no adjustments to the allocation.

Select Confirm Cancel (F8) to complete the cancellation.

## **Deallocate Payments Window**

To display this window, select **Deallocate** <u>Item</u> (F13) on the Cancel Cash <u>Item</u> window and Press Enter on the Cancellation Details pop-up.

Select Confirm Deallocate (F8) to confirm the de-allocation.

# Cancel payment run [43/CSP]

Use this task to cancel a payment run processed in Cash Management.

Payment runs available in this task will only be those in which have been processed through cash management (use the 14/APY Terminate Payments option to cancel payments released but not processed in Cash Management)

Payments within the run will only be available for cancellation if all processing is complete for the payment (as required to cancel individual payments through 42/CSP)

### Select Payment Run for Cancellation Window

To display this window, select the Cancel Payment Run task

#### **Options**

#### **Select for Cancellation**

Use this to select the payment run for cancellation. The List Payments for Cancellation will be displayed

## List Payments for Cancellation Window

To display this window, select a payment run in the Select Payment Run for Cancellation window

#### **Options**

#### Select

Select all payments to be cancelled.

Note. Payments not eligible for cancellation will be shown in reverse image

#### **Function Keys**

#### De-select all/Select all (F17)

Use this to select all payments for cancellation

Select payments and press ENTER to display the Cancellation Details pop-up

### Cancellation Details Pop-up

#### **Fields**

#### **Period**

This field <u>defaults</u> to the current <u>period</u>, but can be amended.

#### **Accounting Date**

Enter or select the accounting date

#### Include in Bank Reconciliation?

Use this checkbox as follows:

Checked - To include the item in bank reconciliation

Unchecked - Not to include the item in bank reconciliation

Select OK to proceed with cancellation and display Confirm Cancellation pop-up

### Confirm Cancellation Pop-up

To display this pop-up, press ENTER on the Cancellation Details pop-up

Select Confirm Cancel to cancel all selected payments in batch.

A report of payments cancelled and <u>transactions</u> created will be produced, as well as a listing of any <u>transactions</u> that could not be cancelled due to status/information, these would need to be reviewed separately and potentially cancelled in 42/CSP if amended

Note.

Payments that have had details written to <u>BACS</u> submission files will be cancelled but details held in the <u>BACS</u> files will not be removed (as in standard Cancel <u>Transactions</u>); similarly electronic transfer and banking engine <u>transactions</u> may be cancelled but details externally will not be.

Cash on account raised in payments that have been subsequently allocated will not be cancelled but must be selected via 42/CSP separately to elect whether the subsequent allocations are also to be cancelled.

# Bank Statement Reconciliation [51/CSP]

This task is used to reconcile your bank accounts with the statement supplied by your bank.

Postings from suspense are made automatically.

If your bank supplies your statements electronically, you may find it more convenient to carry out your reconciliation using the Automatic Bank Reconciliation tasks.

### Reconcile Bank Statements Account Window

To display this window, select the **Bank Statement Reconciliation** task.

Use this window to enter bank statement details.

#### **Fields**

#### **Bank Account**

Enter the General Ledger account code here.

Alternatively, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Select <u>Bank Account</u> pop-up.

#### Statement Number

Enter the number on the statement provided by the bank. It is also possible to maintain any previous statement.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Statement pop-up.

#### Statement Date

Enter the statement date.

#### **Opening Balance**

Enter the opening balance as shown on the bank's statement, in the currency of the <u>bank</u> <u>account</u>.

The balance figures entered on this window are used to generate a batch control total.

#### **Closing Balance**

Enter the closing balance as shown on the bank's statement, in the currency of the <u>bank</u> <u>account</u>.

The balance figures entered on this window are used to generate a batch control total.

#### Receipt Batch as One

Use this checkbox as follows:

Checked - If all receipts posted with the same <u>bank reference</u> are to be displayed as a single <u>item</u> on the list of uncleared <u>items</u> (batched)

Unchecked - If each receipt is to be displayed separately.

#### Payment Batch as One

Use this checkbox as follows:

Checked - If all payments posted with the same <u>bank reference</u> are to be displayed as a single <u>item</u> on the list of uncleared <u>items</u> (batched)

Unchecked - If each payment is to be displayed separately

**Note**: When a statement is created in batched mode, suspended and then re-selected as not batched, the details of all <u>transactions</u> will be displayed and available for change.

**Caution:** If the statement was originally created with the batch <u>flag</u> unchecked, it will not be possible to select this with the batched <u>flag</u> checked. In this situation an error message will be displayed.

If the statement was originally created with the batched <u>flag</u> unchecked, it will not be possible to select this with the batched <u>flag</u> checked. In this situation an error message will be displayed.

Enter the details and Press Enter to display the Reconcile Bank Statements Item window.

### Reconcile Bank Statements Item Window

To display this window, enter the details on the Reconcile Bank Statements Account window and Press Enter.

Use this window to select one <u>item</u> or a range of <u>items</u> for reconciliation and eliminate <u>items</u> from the reconciliation. You may suspend the reconciliation if you are unable to complete the <u>session</u>.

Note. If payments/receipts are not batched then the <u>bank reference</u> for suspended <u>items</u> are shown in reverse image, if selected, these will be posted from suspense when the statement is updated.

#### Fields

#### Option (Opt)

Enter one of the following:

- 1 To clear one item
- 2/3 To clear a range of items

Enter 2 against the first item of the range and 3 against the last.

- 4 To ignore items within a range
- 8 To override the value date

This is available only if you are using value dates, specified in the Country-specific <u>Parameters</u> in General <u>Ledger</u>.

#### **Document/Cleared Date**

If you carry out your reconciliation daily, you do not need to maintain the date line by line, and therefore the date shown here is taken from the statement date and is not maintainable.

However, a setting on the Cash Management <u>parameters</u> file activates the Cleared Date function, making this date field maintainable. In this case, enter the appropriate date.

**Note**: A running total of the <u>items</u> you select is shown at the top of the window for comparison with the statement total.

#### **Functions**

#### Position (F5)

Use this to display a pop-up where you can enter the <u>bank reference</u> to which the list is to be positioned.

#### Suspend (F16)

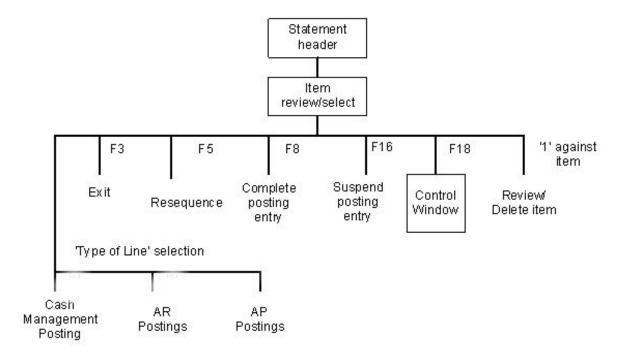
If you want to leave the task (to make a statement posting, for example), but want to retain selections made so far, you can suspend the task by selecting **Suspend (F16)**. While a statement is suspended, you cannot enter another statement for the same <u>bank account</u>.

Press Enter and then select **Accept Entered Details (F8)** to proceed with the reconciliation. This is only possible if your running total agrees with the control total.

# Bank Statement Posting [52/CSP]

This task enables you to enter statement details on to the system.

As this task leads to entries for Accounts Payable and Accounts Receivable as well as for Cash Management, the task is an extended one, with many windows. The following diagram shows the window flow up to the Type of Line selection window:



The windows which follow on from the above diagram are shown in diagrams in their relevant subsections.

### Bank Statement Posting Account Window

To display this window, select the Bank Statement Posting task.

Use this window to enter details for the bank statement.

#### **Fields**

#### **Bank Account**

Enter the General Ledger account here.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Bank Account pop-up.

#### **Statement Number**

Enter the number on the statement provided by the bank. A new statement cannot be entered if a suspended statement is outstanding.

If the statement you enter is not accepted, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to see the suspended statement to be entered first.

#### **Statement Date**

Enter or select the statement date.

#### **Opening Balance**

Enter the opening balance as shown on the bank statement, in the currency of the bank account.

This should equal the closing balance on the last statement processed for the selected <u>bank</u> account.

#### **Closing Balance**

Enter the closing balance as shown on the bank statement.

#### Period

This field <u>defaults</u> to the current Cash Management <u>period</u>, and must not be less than the current General <u>Ledger period</u>.

**Note**: If the opening balance you have entered does not correspond to the system's record of the last closing balance for the <u>bank account</u>, a message will display. You can either amend your entry, or simply Press Enter again to override the message.

Press Enter to display the Bank Statement Posting Line window.

### Bank Statement Posting Line Window

To display this window, enter details on the Bank Statement Posting Account window and Press Enter.

This window is where you specify the type of posting. This can be Cash Management, receipts or payments.

#### **Fields**

#### Type of Line

Select one of the following:

- Cash Management
- Receipts
- Payments

**Note:** As postings are made, whether they are Cash Management, Accounts Receivable or Accounts Payable postings, they will be added to the list of postings on this window.

Select the type of posting, and Press Enter.

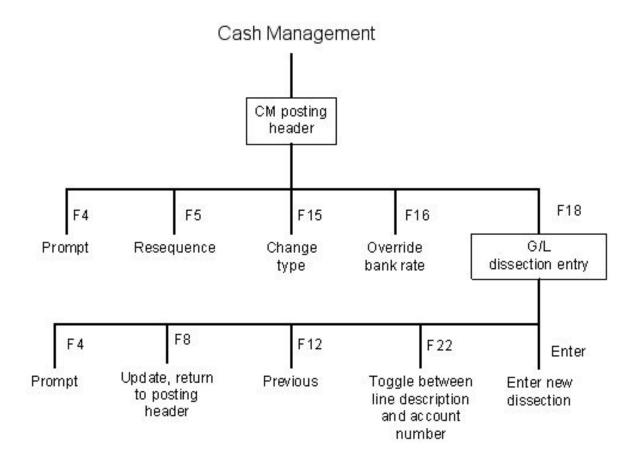
If you selected a Cash Management posting, the Bank Statement Posting CS <u>Item</u> window is displayed.

If you selected a receipts posting, the Bank Statement Posting AR Item window is displayed.

If you selected a payments posting, the Bank Statement Posting AP Item window is displayed.

# Cash Management Posting

To make a Cash Management entry posting select Cash Management in the Type of Line field on the Bank Statement Posting Line window. The sequence of windows is as follows:



The window you see is the third Bank Statement Posting window.

### Bank Statement Posting CS Item Window

To display this window, select the Type of Line as **Cash Management** and Press Enter on the Bank Statement Posting Line window.

Use this window to post new Cash Management <u>items</u> and match or amend existing <u>items</u>. This window also displays all the Cash Management <u>items</u> matched and posted for this statement so far.

For a new posting, enter all fields except Cash Management Reference.

To confirm existing items, enter only Cash Management Reference.

#### Fields

#### Reference

To confirm an existing <u>item</u>, enter a valid Cash Management reference for this <u>bank account</u>. This must be a reference which has not already been matched against a statement.

This field should not be entered when you are posting a new item.

#### **Bank Value**

Enter the <u>item</u> value in the bank currency, as detailed on the statement.

Any payment <u>transaction</u> needs to have a minus sign against the value, as this cannot be determined from the <u>item</u> type.

The bank value may be different from the original posting value because of currency variance. The <u>item</u> value will not change.

#### **Date**

Enter the date assigned to the item by the statement. This field defaults to the statement date.

Note that the date and <u>period</u> shown <u>default</u> from the statement, not from the <u>item</u> posting date.

#### Item Value

If the <u>item</u> currency differs from the bank currency, this field becomes input capable so that the value can be entered.

Any payment <u>transaction</u> needs to have a minus sign against the value, as this cannot be determined from the <u>item</u> type.

#### Currency

Enter the <u>currency code</u> for the <u>item</u>.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Currency pop-up.

This field <u>defaults</u> to the bank currency.

#### Item Type

Select one of the following:

- 1 Standard transaction (payment or receipt)
- 2 Bank charges
- 3 Bank to bank transfer

#### Reason Code

You can optionally enter a reason code.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Reason Code pop-up.

#### Period

Enter the <u>period</u> which applies to the <u>item</u> statement date.

If you are using accounting dates and this field is left blank, the <u>period</u> will be derived from the calendar field using the date entered.

#### Description

You can optionally enter a description for the item.

#### **Pay Method**

Enter a valid payment method.

Alternatively, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Select <u>Payment Method</u> pop-up.

#### **Cash Management Reference**

Enter the Cash Management reference number of an existing cash item.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Reference pop-up.

#### **Functions**

#### Resequence (F5)

Use this to re-sequence the listed items.

#### Change Type (F15)

Use this to return to the review window and review <u>items</u> entered, or to change the type of posting to be made.

#### Bank Rate (F16)

Use this to override the bank currency rate. This is only available for foreign currency banks.

Press Enter to display the Bank Statement Posting GL <u>Dissections</u> window.

### Bank Statement Posting GL Dissections Window

To display this window, Press Enter on the Bank Statement Posting CS Item window.

This window enables you to enter General <u>Ledger dissections</u> for the values entered on the previous window.

#### **Fields**

#### **Account**

Enter a valid General Ledger account.

If bank to bank transfer was indicated on the previous window (<u>Item</u> Type 3), only <u>bank accounts</u> may be entered.

The currency of the item must be the same as that of this bank account.

You can use the prompt facility to select from the pop-up.

#### **Posting Value**

This <u>defaults</u> to the full <u>item</u> value, but may be overridden if tax or multiple <u>dissections</u> are being entered.

#### Tax Code

Enter a tax code for the posting.

Alternatively, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Select Tax Code pop-up.

If the GL account has a tax code assigned to it, that code must be used.

Note: A tax code is assigned to a GL Account via the Accounts Maintenance task.

#### Tax Type (Untitled)

Select one of the following:

- Purchase
- Sales

This will enable you to produce a tax reconciliation report. This tax code for this account may be fixed as either purchase or sales tax.

**Note:** Tax on the GL Account is set up as Purchase, Sales or Either in the Accounts Maintenance task.

#### Tax Value

Enter the tax value as required.

#### **Date**

This <u>defaults</u> to the date from the previous window, but may be overridden.

#### Description

This defaults to the description entered on the previous window, but may be overridden.

If you are entering a new posting, distribute the <u>item</u> value among the General <u>Ledger</u> accounts as required. Press Enter after each entry to see it appear in the list at the top of the window.

#### **Functions**

#### Line Description (F22)

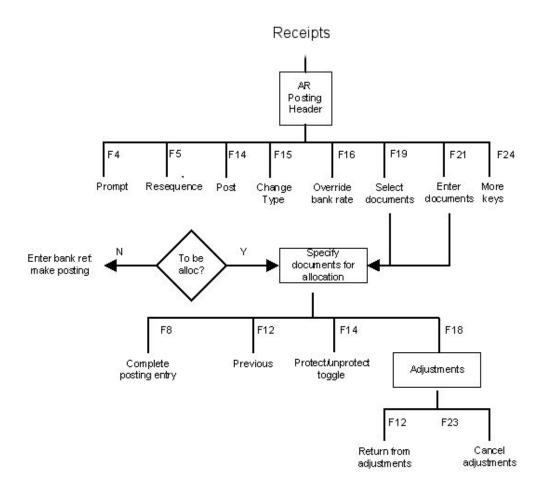
Use this to toggle between displaying the line description and the full account code.

If you are confirming an existing posting, this window will not be maintainable, and you can confirm the <u>dissections</u> by selecting **Update (F8)** or return to the previous window by selecting **Previous (F12)**.

### Making an Accounts Receivable Posting

If you want to make an Accounts Receivable entry, select **Receipts** in the Type of Line field on the Bank Statement Posting Line window, as shown in the first diagram.

The sequence of windows will be as follows:



The first window you see will be the fifth Bank Statement Posting window.

### Bank Statement Posting AR Item Window

To display this window, select the Type of Line as **Receipts** and Press Enter on the Bank Statement Posting Line window.

From this window, new receipts may be posted and allocated. Collection runs can also be confirmed. This window also displays all the posted receipts for this statement so far.

#### Fields

#### Customer

This field is optional, but if an invoice number is entered as well, they must correspond.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Customer Selection pop-up.

#### **Bank Value**

Enter the value for the item in the bank currency as detailed on the statement.

#### Invoice (1st field)

Enter a valid item type, for example IN or CR.

Alternatively, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the pop-up.

#### Invoice (2nd field)

Enter a valid item reference.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the pop-up.

#### Item Value

If the <u>item</u> currency differs from the bank currency, this field becomes input capable so that the value can be entered.

#### Session

Enter a valid session number that applies to a collection run (direct debits).

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the pop-up.

#### **Oldest Item Onwards**

Use this checkbox as follows:

Checked - To display all outstanding items for selection

If this is checked, a customer must also be specified.

#### Item Range

You can optionally enter the range of <u>items</u> to display for selection, entering both the <u>item</u> type and reference for the From and To values.

If a customer has not been specified, the customer for the first item in the range will be assumed.

You can use the <u>prompt</u> facility on these fields.

#### **Date**

Enter the date for the posting.

This will default to the date entered as the statement date.

#### Pay Method

Enter a payment method.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Payment Method pop-up.

If this field is left blank and a customer number has been entered, the <u>default</u> method for that customer will be used.

#### Currency

Enter the currency for the item.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Currency pop-up.

This field <u>defaults</u> to the bank currency.

#### **Period**

Enter the <u>period</u> for this <u>item</u> on the statement. If you are using accounting dates and this field is left blank, the <u>period</u> will be derived from the calendar file using the date entered.

#### AR Company

Enter the Accounts Receivable company for the item.

Alternatively, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Select Company pop-up.

**Note:** The Invoice, <u>Session</u>, Oldest <u>Item</u> and <u>Item</u> Range fields enable you to specify either the exact document you want to match against (in the Invoice field), or a range from which you can select documents to allocate on the next window.

If you make an entry in any of these fields, **OK**, **Post Receipt (F14)**, **Select (F19)** and **Enter Invoices (F21)** become interchangeable. They will all display the next window for allocation.

Entering a value in one of these fields prevents you from using the remaining ones.

If you enter a value, but not in the Invoice, <u>Session</u>, Oldest <u>Item</u> or <u>Item</u> Range fields, the functions behave in different ways. **Post Receipt (F14)** will perform a simple posting without allocation. **Select (F19)** will display all the documents available for allocation, and you can select from them as you want. **Enter Invoices (F21)** will display a window of empty allocation fields, and you can enter the documents as you want.

#### **Functions**

You must enter valid data on the window and Press Enter to display **Post Receipt (F14)**, **Select (F19)** and **Enter Invoices (F21)**.

#### Resequence (F5)

Use this to re-sequence listed items.

#### Post Receipt (F14)

Use this to perform a standard posting if no allocation fields have been completed If they have, the Document Listing window is displayed, as with **Select (F19)** and **Enter Invoices (F21)**.

#### Change Type (F15)

Use this to cancel the current operation and return to the Review <u>Item</u> window.

#### Bank Rate (F16)

If the bank currency is different from the Cash Management company currency, this function will be available to override the bank exchange rate.

#### Select (F19)

If no allocation fields have been completed, this function takes you to the Document Listing window and enables you to select the documents you want to allocate by scrolling through the selection. If allocation fields have been completed, this simply shows the documents selected on the Document Listing window, as with **Post Receipt (F14)** and **Enter Invoices (F21)**.

#### **Enter Invoices (F21)**

This works in the same way as **Select (F19)**, except that instead of displaying a list of documents available for allocation, it displays empty allocation fields for you to enter the document details yourself. This is useful if you know your document details, and want to avoid scrolling through lists of documents. Again, this feature is not used if allocation fields have been completed.

### Bank Statement Posting AR Selection Window

To display this window, enter an invoice reference, a range or the oldest <u>item flag</u> and Press Enter on the Bank Statement Posting AR <u>Item</u> window. All the selected documents will be listed, ready for matching with the receipt. Those <u>items</u> posted with discount will have that value displayed in the appropriate column.

This is the allocation window. The appearance of the window depends on the functions you selected on earlier windows. If you selected **Enter Invoices (F21)**, for example, the fields will be empty, and you must enter the details yourself.

#### **Fields**

#### Select

Enter one of the following:

- 1 To select a document for allocation
- If 1 is already displayed, the item has previously been selected for allocation.
- 2 To view the discount history details

The Select <u>Item</u> Discount pop-up is displayed for you to select a discount line that matches the current <u>item</u>.

#### **Date**

This field displays the document date.

#### **Document Type**

Enter the document transaction type for the document to be allocated.

#### **Description**

Enter the reference of the document for allocation.

#### Value

This field displays the value of the document.

#### Part-value

If only part of the document is to be allocated, enter that value here.

#### **Discount**

This field displays any settlement discount.

#### **Functions**

#### Protect/Unprotect (F14)

Some fields in this window are protected. This enables you to use **Tab** to move to the required fields and jump over fields you do not want to maintain. Sometimes the only unprotected field is the Select field.

To enter a protected field, select **Protect/Unprotect (F14)** and all the fields available to you in that task (this may not be all the fields on the window) will become unprotected and inputcapable.

#### Adjustments (F19)

Use this to enter adjustments.

Select **Previous (F12)** to return to the previous window.

### Select Item Discount Pop-up

To display this pop-up, enter **2** in the Select field against an <u>item</u> on the Bank Statement Posting AR Selection window.

This pop-up displays a history of discount values applicable to the selected <u>item</u>. Select the discount to be applied to the <u>item</u>.

Select a discount <u>item</u> to return to the Bank Statement Posting AR Selection window with the discount value displayed.

### Bank Statement Posting (Adjustments) Window

To display this window, select Enter Adjustments (F19) on the Bank Statement Posting window.

Use this window to enter details of the adjustment to the selected bank statement.

#### **Fields**

#### **Type**

Select the adjustment type for the posting.

When you select **AJ** for a write-off adjustment, the tax element of the write-off can be reclaimed if the following applies:

- The reason code used is linked to a GL account with a tax code
- The tax code Discount Basis should be set to 2

Note: A tax code is assigned to a GL Account via the Account Code Maintenance task.

Tax Discount Basis is set to 2 via the Tax Code Maintenance task.

#### Description

Enter a description for the adjustment.

#### Value

Enter the adjustment value.

#### Rsn

Enter a reason code for the adjustment.

Tax can be reclaimed. When the <u>reason code</u> used is attached to the write-off adjustment type **AJ**, the following applies:

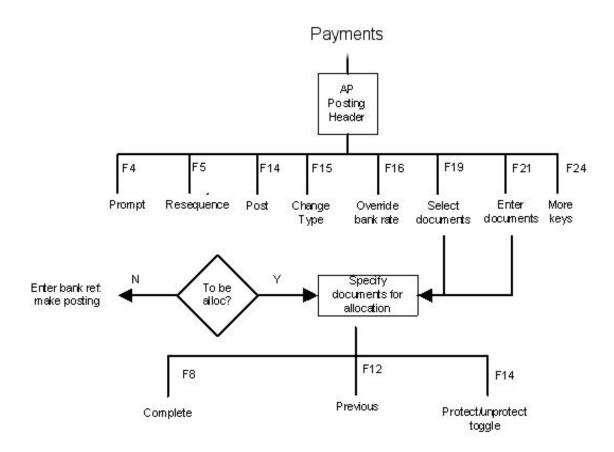
- The "Reason Code Invalid" message displays when the selected Reason Code is valid, but is
  attached to a GL Account Code that is, in turn, attached to a tax code that is eligible for use with
  input tax only.
- The tax element of the written-off value is reclaimable. This depends on the <u>Reason Code</u> being linked to a GL Account with a Tax Discount Basis set to 2.

**Note:** A tax code is assigned to a GL Account via the <u>Account Code</u> Maintenance task. Tax Discount Basis is set up within the tax Code Maintenance task.

Select Return from Adjustments (F19) to leave the window.

# Making an Accounts Payable Posting

To make an Accounts Payable entry, select **Payments** in the Type of Line field on the Bank Statement Posting Line window. The sequence of windows display as follows:



The first window to be displayed is the Bank Statement Posting AP <u>Item</u> window.

### Bank Statement Posting AP Item Window

To display this window, select the Type of Line as **Payments**, and Press Enter on the Bank Statement Posting Line window.

Use this window to post and allocate new payments. This window also displays all the previously posted payments for this statement so far.

#### **Fields**

#### Supplier

This field is optional, but if an invoice number is entered as well, they must correspond.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Supplier Selection pop-up.

#### **Bank Value**

Enter the value for the item in the bank currency as detailed on the statement.

#### Invoice (1st field)

Enter a valid <u>item</u> type, for example IN or CR.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the pop-up.

#### Invoice (2nd field)

Enter a valid item reference.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the pop-up.

#### Item Value

If the <u>item</u> currency differs from the bank currency, this field becomes input capable so that the value can be entered.

#### **Payment Run Number**

Enter the number of the payment run you want to match.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the pop-up.

#### **Oldest Item Onwards**

Use this checkbox as follows:

Checked - To display all outstanding items for selection

If this is **checked**, a supplier must also be specified.

#### Item Range

You can optionally enter the range of <u>items</u> to display for selection, entering both the <u>item</u> type and reference for the From and To values.

If a supplier has not been specified, the supplier for the first item in the range will be assumed.

You can use the prompt facility on these fields.

#### Date

Enter the date for the posting.

This will default to the date entered as the statement date.

#### **Pay Method**

Enter a <u>payment method</u>.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Payment Method pop-up.

If this field is left blank and a supplier number has been entered, the <u>default</u> method for that supplier will be used.

#### Currency

Enter the currency for the item.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Currency pop-up.

This field <u>defaults</u> to the bank currency.

#### Period

Enter the <u>period</u> for this <u>item</u> on the statement. If you are using accounting dates and this field is left blank, the <u>period</u> will be derived from the calendar file using the date entered.

#### **AP Company**

Enter the Accounts Payable company for the item.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Company pop-up.

**Note:** The Invoice, Payment Run Number, Oldest <u>Item</u> and <u>Item</u> Range fields enable you to specify either the exact document you want to match against (in the Invoice field), or a range from which you can select documents to allocate on the next window.

If you make an entry in any of these fields, **OK**, **Post Receipt (F14)**, **Select (F19)** and **Enter Invoices (F21)** become interchangeable. They will all display the next window for allocation.

Entering a value in one of these fields prevents you from using the remaining ones.

If you enter a value, but not in the Invoice, <u>Session</u>, Oldest <u>Item</u> or <u>Item</u> Range fields, the functions behave in different ways. **Post Receipt (F14)** will perform a simple posting without allocation. **Select (F19)** will display all the documents available for allocation, and you can select from them as you want. **Enter Invoices (F21)** will display a window of empty allocation fields, and you can enter the documents as you want.

#### **Functions**

You must enter valid data on the window and Press Enter to display **Post Receipt (F14)**, **Select (F19)** and **Enter Invoices (F21)**.

#### Resequence (F5)

Use this to re-sequence listed items.

#### Post Payment (F14)

Use this to perform a standard posting if no allocation fields have been completed If they have, the Document Listing window is displayed, as with **Select (F19)** and **Enter Invoices (F21)**.

#### Change Type (F15)

Use this to cancel the current operation and return to the Review <u>Item</u> window.

#### Bank Rate (F16)

If the bank currency is different from the Cash Management company currency, this function will be available to override the bank exchange rate.

#### Select (F19)

If no allocation fields have been completed, this function takes you to the Document Listing window and enables you to select the documents you want to allocate by scrolling through the selection. If allocation fields have been completed, this simply shows the documents selected on the Document Listing window, as with **Post Payment (F14)** and **Enter Invoices (F21)**.

#### **Enter Invoices (F21)**

This works in the same way as **Select (F19)**, except that instead of displaying a list of documents available for allocation, it displays empty allocation fields for you to enter the document details yourself. This is useful if you know your document details, and want to avoid scrolling through lists of documents. Again, this feature is not used if allocation fields have been completed.

### Bank Statement Posting AP Selection Window

To display this window, enter an invoice reference, a range or the oldest <u>item flag</u> on the Bank Statement Posting AP <u>Item</u> window and Press Enter.

This window displays all the selected documents, ready for matching with the payment. Those <u>items</u> posted with discount display the discount value.

#### Select

Enter 1 against all the documents to be allocated.

#### **Fields**

#### **Date**

This field displays the document date.

#### **Document Type**

Enter the type of the document for allocation.

#### Description

Enter the reference of the document for allocation.

#### Value

This field displays the value of the document.

#### Part-value

If only part of the document is to be allocated, enter that value here.

#### **Discount**

Any settlement discount will be shown here.

#### **Functions**

#### **Unprotect/Protect (F14)**

Use this to toggle the settings so that the fields Part-value and Discount may be either entered or protected.

Press Enter and then select Exit (F3) to leave the task.

# AR Interface Posting [53/CSP]

The AR interface, also known as Lock Box, is provided to process Accounts Receivable receipts sent to you on magnetic tape, or via EDI, by your bank.

The process follows the following stages:

Your bank sends a tape of customer receipts.

You load this data. Your agent will tailor a program to achieve this, and a standard batch process will validate the data, make the posting, and allocate the cash. If no error is found during validation, the current task is not needed, since further intervention is required.

If an error is found (for example, a mistyped invoice number), use this task to correct the error and to allocate the cash and make adjustments.

Caution: if errors do not occur, this task is not needed and no further intervention is required.

### AR Interface Posting Initial Window

To display this window, select the AR Interface Posting task.

Use this window to enter the bank account and reference of the receipts to be processed.

#### **Fields**

#### **Bank Account**

Enter the bank account code.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Bank Account pop-up.

#### Interface Reference

Enter the reference identifying the receipts to be processed. The reference is created by the batch job.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select AR Interface Reference pop-up.

Press Enter to display the AR Interface Posting Selection window.

### AR Interface Posting Selection Window

To display this window, enter details in the AR Interface Posting Initial window and Press Enter.

Use this window to select an Accounts Receivable item for amendment.

#### **Options**

#### Select

Use this to select the entry you want to maintain.

Select an entry and Press Enter. The details of that entry are displayed on the AR Interface Posting Detail window.

### AR Interface Posting Detail Window

To display this window, select an entry on the AR Interface Posting Selection window and Press Enter.

Some of these details may be changed so that the cash allocation can be made and the <u>transaction</u> posted. The bank value cannot be changed.

#### **Fields**

#### Customer

You can enter a different customer.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Customer Selection pop-up.

#### Item Value

The item value can be amended only if the bank currency differs from the item currency.

#### **Date**

You can amend the posting date as required.

This will default to the date from the interface file.

#### Pay Method

You can amend the <u>payment method</u> required.

Alternatively, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Select <u>Payment Method</u> pop-up.

This will default to the method on the interface file.

#### Currency

Enter the item currency if it differs from the bank currency.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Currency pop-up.

#### Period

Enter the period for this item on the statement.

#### **AR Company**

Enter the Accounts Receivable company for the <u>item</u>. This field displays only if more than one Accounts Receivable company is attached to the Cash Management company.

#### **Options**

#### Select

Use this to select the <u>transaction</u> line to process.

#### **Functions**

#### Resequence (F5)

Use this to re-sequence listed items

#### Post Payment (F14)

Use this to perform a standard posting.

#### Bank Rate (F16)

Use this to override the bank currency rate. This is shown only for currency banks

#### **Enter Invoices (F21)**

Use this to enter new invoices.

Select **Enter Invoices (F21)** to enter a new invoice and display the AR Interface Posting Invoice Entry window.

### AR Interface Posting Invoice Entry Window

To display this window, select Enter Invoices (F21) on the AR Interface Posting Detail window.

The current invoice is displayed, but the details may be altered.

#### **Fields**

#### Item Type

Amend this as required.

#### Item Reference

You can amend this as required.

#### Select (1)

Enter 1 if the whole item is to be allocated.

Alternatively, enter a part value in the next field.

#### **Part Value**

If the whole <u>item</u> value is not to be cleared, enter the part value here. You must first select **F14** to make the field input-capable.

#### **Discount**

Enter any discount value here.

#### **Functions**

#### Protect/Unprotect (F14)

Use this to toggle between enabling and disabling input in the Part Value and Discount fields.

#### Adjustments (F19)

Use this to enter adjustments.

Select **Adjustments (F19)** to enter any adjustments. The AR Interface Posting Adjustments window is displayed.

### AR Interface Posting Adjustments Window

To display this window, select **Adjustments (F19)** on the AR Interface Posting Invoice Entry window.

Once the adjustments are entered and you have returned to the AR Interface Posting Invoice Entry window, the allocation figures should balance and **Update (F8)** will become available for update. When you select **Update (F8)**, a pop-up is displayed for you to enter the <u>bank reference</u>.

Select **Update (F8)** or **Suspend (F16)** as required. If you select **Update (F8)**, a message will confirm that your entries have been made.

# Cash Book Period Close [6/CS]

The <u>period</u> close tasks are carried out once you are satisfied that all <u>transactions</u> for the <u>period</u> have been processed.

This task performs the following:

- Creation of a new period balance record for each bank account
- Update of the calendar file with the opening date for the new period
- Update of the company profile with the new period number

The system checks that there are no outstanding tasks that should be completed, such as the allocation of cheque numbers. If there are, an appropriate message displays.

Note: Cash Management periods may be closed independently of other System21 modules.

### Period End Window

To display this window, select the **Cash Book** Period Close task.

This window displays any messages regarding your readiness to close the <u>period</u>. Examples are: "There are one or more unprocessed or suspended allocations" and "Accounts Payable cheque numbers have still to be allocated".

If the messages are not critical and do not prevent you from closing the <u>period</u>, you can Press Enter and the <u>period</u> close task will continue.

If a message is critical, when you Press Enter you will leave the task. You must attend to the problem outlined in the system message before returning to try to close the period again.

Press Enter. If the period close can complete, the Period End Confirmation window is displayed.

### Period End Confirmation Window

To display this window, Press Enter on the <u>Period</u> End window, providing there are no critical error messages.

This window displays the current <u>period</u> and start date for information only. The next <u>period</u> number is also displayed.

The <u>period</u> close tasks automatically open the next <u>period</u> for Cash Management, and update the calendar file.

#### Fields

#### **Date Opened**

Enter the start date for the new period.

Press Enter to submit a batch job to close the period.

# Chapter 4 Automatic Bank Reconciliation

### **Automatic Bank Reconciliation Overview**

If you receive your bank statement on paper, you will need to reconcile each entry manually using the Bank <u>Statement Reconciliation</u> tasks.

If, however, your bank sends you your statement electronically you can use the many features of Automatic Bank Reconciliation to run your <u>statement reconciliation</u> as an automatic batch job.

A typical task sequence might be as follows:

- Set up <u>transaction types</u> (<u>Transaction Type</u>).
- Load the data (Load Data to Transfer File).
- Extract the data wanted for reconciliation (Interface Data Transfer).
- Run the automatic reconciliation (Automatic Bank Reconciliation).
- Print a report of unmatched <u>items</u> (Statement Match Status).
- EITHER: Use the <u>Bank Reference</u> or Cash <u>Item</u> task or the <u>Bank Reference</u> or Statement task to alter the <u>bank references</u> and then run Automatic Bank Reconciliation again
- OR: Reconcile the unmatched <u>items</u> using Manual Bank Reconciliation.
- Delete a statement when it is fully reconciled (Statement Delete).

# Interface Data Transfer [1/CSR]

This task checks that all data received from the bank is valid before it is transferred. Once the process is complete, a report is produced of all <u>transaction</u> details, with an error message where an invalid <u>transaction type</u> is found.

### Bank Interface Data Transfer Window

To display this window, select the Interface Data Transfer task.

Use this window to specify the account and statement.

#### **Fields**

#### Statement Number

This is the number assigned to your statement by the bank, and is unique within a <u>bank account</u>. If this number is entered, all statement details will have the same statement reference within Cash Management.

If you leave this field blank, the statement <u>items</u> will instead be sorted by date, and the reference will be that date in Julian date reference (CYYDDD, where C is the century <u>flag</u>; 0=20th C, 1=21st C).

You can use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Select Statement pop-up, but you must first enter or select a valid <u>bank account</u>.

#### **Bank Account**

Enter the General Ledger account code (not the bank reference).

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Bank Account pop-up.

If a specific account is entered, only <u>transactions</u> for this account will be selected. Leave this field blank for all <u>transactions</u> to be selected.

Press Enter and then select **Submit Interface Routine (F8)** to submit a job to transfer the data from the tape to the file.

# Manual Bank Reconciliation [2/CSR]

After running the Automatic Bank Reconciliation task you may be left with unmatched items.

There are two ways of dealing with this:

- Use the tasks for changing <u>bank references</u> (Maintain <u>Bank Reference</u> on Cash <u>Item</u> and Maintain <u>Bank Reference</u> on Statement) and run the Automatic Bank Reconciliation task again.
- Select this task to match the remaining <u>items</u> interactively.

### Manual Bank Reconciliation Window

To display this window, select the **Manual Bank Reconciliation** task.

Use this window to specify the bank account and statement.

#### **Fields**

#### **Bank Account**

Enter the General Ledger bank code, not the bank reference.

The <u>default</u> is taken from the Cash Management <u>company profile</u>.

Alternatively, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Select <u>Bank Account</u> pop-up.

#### Statement Number

This is the number assigned to your statement by the bank, and is unique within a bank account.

You must enter a statement number.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Statement pop-up.

Press Enter to display the Manual Bank Reconciliation Selection window.

### Manual Bank Reconciliation Selection Window

To display this window, enter or select a <u>bank account</u> and statement number on the Manual Bank Reconciliation window and Press Enter.

This window shows two tables. The upper one lists the outstanding Cash Management <u>transactions</u> and the lower one lists the outstanding statement lines.

#### <u>Fields</u>

#### Select

Check the <u>transaction(s)</u> you want in the upper table and the statement line(s) you want to match in the lower table.

#### **Functions**

#### Update (F8)

Use this when you have selected matching transactions from both tables.

If the total of Cash Management <u>transactions</u> selected matches the total of statement lines selected, the update will proceed. If the totals differ, the system will display the value of the discrepancy.

#### Position to (F15)

Use this to position to an item in either table.

If you want to re-position in either table, select **Position To (F15)** to display the Position Lists.

If you have checked transactions, select **Update** (F8) to complete the match.

### Position Lists Pop-up

To display this pop-up, select **Position To (F15)** on the Manual Bank Reconciliation Selection window.

Use this pop-up to select the <u>transactions</u> at which you want to start the display.

#### **Fields**

#### Cash Manager <u>Items</u>

#### Position to Bank Reference

Enter the bank reference on which the upper table should re-position.

Or

#### Cash Reference

Enter the Cash Management reference number on which the upper table should re-position.

#### Statement **Items**

#### **Position to Bank Reference**

Enter the bank reference on which the lower table should re-position.

Press Enter to effect the re-positioning on the window.

### **Totals Not Equal Pop-up**

This pop-up is displayed if there is a discrepancy between the Cash Book and Statement transactions selected on the Manual Bank Reconciliation Selection window.

#### **Functions**

#### Charges (F8)

Use this to enter charges to account for the difference

Select **Charges (F8)** to display the Mismatch Posting pop-up or select **Return (F12)** to return to the Manual Bank Reconciliation Selection window.

### Mismatch Posting Pop-up

To display this pop-up, select **Charges (F8)** on the Totals Not Equal pop-up.

Use this pop-up to enter mismatch posting details.

#### <u>Fields</u>

#### Account

Enter the account to which charge postings are to be made.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Account pop-up.

#### **G/L Description**

Enter a transaction description for the General Ledger.

#### **Posting Date**

This field defaults to today's date. You can enter or select another date.

#### **Period**

This field <u>defaults</u> to the current <u>period</u>. You can enter a different <u>period</u>.

Specify the account details and then select **Update (F8)**. This performs the updates and re-displays the Manual Bank Reconciliation Selection window where you can match more <u>items</u>.

# Automatic Bank Reconciliation [3/CSR]

This task will compare all outstanding Cash Management <u>transactions</u> with the <u>transactions</u> transferred from the bank onto the system, and will match any two that have the same value and <u>bank reference</u>.

The bank reference is used by the bank to refer to a transaction, for example, the cheque number.

A report of mismatches will be produced.

### **Automatic Bank Reconciliation Window**

To display this window, select the **Automatic Bank Reconciliation** task.

Use this window to specify the bank account and statement.

#### **Fields**

#### **Bank Account**

Enter the General Ledger bank code, not the bank reference.

The <u>default</u> is taken from the Cash Management <u>company profile</u>.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Bank Account pop-up.

#### Statement Number

This is the number assigned to your statement by the bank, and is unique within a <u>bank account</u>.

You must enter a statement number.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Statement pop-up.

Press Enter and then select **Submit Matching Routine**. This submits a job that runs the automatic reconciliation.

# Maintain Bank Transaction Types [11/CSR]

This task will be the first used within Automatic Bank Reconciliation, as it sets up the <u>transaction</u> <u>types</u> needed in order to read the data sent by your bank.

The <u>transaction types</u> are used by the system to decode the data on the statement sent electronically. Do not confuse these <u>transaction types</u> with those elsewhere in the system which refer to <u>item transactions</u>, such as IN for invoice, etc.

You can define here all <u>transaction types</u> to be used, whether credits, debits, or summaries/totals; you may also decide to exclude certain types from the reconciliation procedure altogether.

### Transaction Types Maintenance Selection Window

To display this window, select the **Maintain Bank** Transaction Types task.

Use this window to specify the bank account.

#### **Fields**

#### **Bank Account**

Sets of <u>transaction</u> codes may vary from one bank to another. If this is the case, enter the code for the bank for which you want to define <u>transaction</u> codes.

If you leave this field blank, the system will apply the codes entered to all banks.

You may use the prompt facility to select from the Select Bank Account pop-up

Press Enter to display the <u>Transaction Types</u> Maintenance window.

### Transaction Types Maintenance Window

To display this window, enter or select a <u>bank account</u> on the <u>Transaction Type</u> Selection window and Press Enter.

Use this window to enter details of a new transaction type or amend an existing one.

**Note:** The file is updated once a new type is added to the list. The type remains even if you exit the window by selecting **Previous (F12)** or **Exit (F3)**.

#### **Fields**

#### **Bank Type**

Enter the transaction type code used by the bank to indicate a particular transaction.

#### **Payment Method**

Enter the <u>payment method</u> corresponding to the <u>transaction type</u> entered.

Alternatively, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Select <u>Payment Method</u> pop-up.

#### **Bank Credit**

Use this checkbox as follows:

Checked - If the <u>transaction type</u> refers to a credit <u>transaction</u>

Unchecked - If the <u>transaction type</u> refers to a debit <u>transaction</u>

#### **Total Record**

Use this checkbox as follows:

Checked - if the <u>transaction type</u> refers to a record that is a total rather than a <u>transaction</u> which will appear as a line on the statement

Unchecked - If the <u>transaction type</u> refers to a <u>transaction</u> which will appear as a line on the statement

#### **Exclude Record**

Use this checkbox as follows:

Checked - If the <u>transaction type</u> refers to a record that is not used in the reconciliation process

The record will be ignored when processing

Unchecked - If the transaction type refers to a record that is used in the reconciliation process

**Note:** If you **check** this field, you need not enter a <u>payment method</u>.

Enter one <u>transaction type</u> and Press Enter. The <u>transaction type</u> is displayed in the table, leaving the entry fields free for entering another type.

# Maintain Bank Reference on Cash Item [12/CSR]

**Note:** This task is exactly the same as the Enquire by Cash Reference task, except that the <u>Bank</u> reference is maintainable.

### Item Enquiry Selection Window

Use this window to select the cash book reference of the item on which you want to enquire.

#### **Fields**

#### **Cash Reference**

Enter the cash book reference of the specific item on which you wish to enquire.

#### **Functions**

#### Page Down/Page Up

You may use these to scroll to another cash reference.

Press Enter to display the item details.

# Item Enquiry Details Window

To display this window, enter a cash reference and Press Enter on the <u>Item</u> Enquiry Selection window.

#### **Fields**

#### **Bank Reference**

You can update the bank reference as required for this item.

When you have entered the correct <u>bank reference</u>, select **Update Bank Ref (F8)** to update the <u>item</u>.

# Maintain Bank Reference on Statement [13/CSR]

This task enables you to change the <u>bank reference</u> of a <u>transaction</u> on your bank statement. Use this to match items.

### Bank Reference Maintenance Window

To display this window, select the Maintain Bank Reference on Statement task.

Use this window to specify the bank account and statement.

#### **Fields**

#### **Bank Account**

Enter the General Ledger bank code, not the bank reference.

The <u>default</u> is taken from the Cash Management <u>company profile</u>.

Alternatively, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Select <u>Bank Account</u> pop-up.

#### Statement Number

This is the number assigned to your statement by the bank, and is unique within a bank account.

You must enter a statement number.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Statement pop-up.

Press Enter to see a list of all the <u>outstanding items</u> for the statement on the <u>Bank Reference</u> Maintenance <u>Outstanding Items</u> window.

### Bank Reference Maintenance Outstanding Items Window

To display this window, enter or select a <u>bank account</u> and statement number on the <u>Bank Reference</u> Maintenance window and Press Enter.

This window displays a list of all the outstanding items for the statement.

#### <u>Fields</u>

#### Position to Bank Reference

If you want to re-position the list, enter the reference at which you want the list to begin.

#### **Options**

#### Select

Use this to select the <u>transaction</u> you want to maintain.

Select the reference required to display the <u>Bank Reference</u> Maintenance <u>Transaction</u> Details window.

### Bank Reference Maintenance Transaction Details Window

To display this window, select a reference on the <u>Bank Reference</u> Maintenance <u>Outstanding Items</u> window.

This window shows the transaction details.

#### **Fields**

#### **Bank Reference**

This field shows the current bank reference. You can amend this if necessary.

Amend the reference and then select **Update** (F8) to perform the update and re-display the <u>Bank</u> Reference Maintenance <u>Outstanding Items</u> window.

# Report on Statement Match Status [21/CSR]

This task produces a report listing the details of all unmatched items.

### Bank Statements Match Status Report Window

To display this window, select the Report on Statement Match Status task.

Use this window to enter the bank account and statement range.

#### **Fields**

#### **Bank Account**

Enter the General Ledger bank code, not the bank reference.

The <u>default</u> is taken from the Cash Management <u>company profile</u>.

Alternatively, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Select <u>Bank Account</u> pop-up.

#### **Statement Number Range**

Enter the range of bank statements to be included in the report.

You may use the prompt facility on these fields to select from the Select Statement pop-up.

Enter or select the account number and statement range and then Press Enter. Select **Submit Report (F8)** to generate the report.

# Load Data to Transfer File [81/CSR]

This task is used when you are first loading your statement from the bank. It loads the data into a file ready for analysis and preparation by the Interface Data Transfer task.

Select the **Load Data to Transfer File** task and then select **Confirm submit (F8)** to submit a job to load the data to the transfer file.

# Statement Delete [82/CSR]

When the data supplied by the bank is no longer needed (when, for instance, all outstanding unmatched <u>transactions</u> have been dealt with) it should be deleted from the file.

All data relating to the statement number entered will be deleted.

### Bank Statement Delete Window

To display this window, select the Statement Delete task.

Use this window to specify the statement and bank account.

#### <u>Fields</u>

#### Statement Number

This is the number assigned to your statement by the bank, and is unique within a bank account.

You must enter a statement number.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Statement pop-up.

#### **Bank Account**

Enter the General Ledger bank code, not the bank reference.

The <u>default</u> is taken from the Cash Management <u>company profile</u>.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Bank Account pop-up.

Enter or select the required <u>bank account</u> and statement number and then select **Update** (F8) to submit a job to perform the deletion.

# Chapter 5 Collection Documents Processing

<u>Collection documents</u> (formerly known as bills of exchange) are guaranteed negotiable instruments that can be issued:

- To the company by its customers
- By the company to its suppliers
- As a promissory payment of an outstanding debt

When a document is accepted or issued, it is posted to the customer or supplier account to reduce the outstanding debt. It may be sold to a bank before maturity, or exchanged for cash when it has matured. Discounts may be calculated and taken at different stages of the <u>collection document</u> process.

**Note:** This depends on the setting of the Post Discount on Collection Docs. at Maturity <u>flag</u> in the Country-specific <u>Parameters</u> in GL <u>Utilities</u>.

While documents vary in certain ways from country to country, and even within a country, certain features are recognised internationally. The following are examples of types of collection documents:

- The supplier prints the document and sends it to the customer, who signs and returns it.
- The customer prints, signs and sends the document.
- The supplier sends the bank notice of payments to be debited from the customer's account (a direct debit).

The system offers three ways of generating collection documents:

- The Sales Order Processing invoicing procedure can create <u>collection documents</u>. This is a common way of producing the documents.
- The Accounts Payable module will produce documents to be released within Cash Management.
- Cash Management can create documents as required.

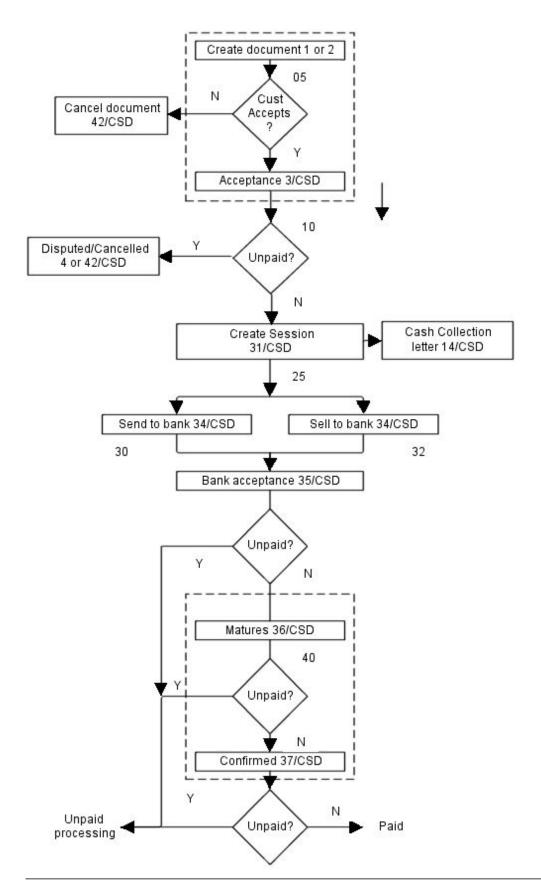
### The Collection Document Cycle

A <u>collection document</u> passes through several stages in its lifetime. The cycle follows the pattern shown below:

- Creation
- Acceptance
- Sent to bank
- Sold to bank
- Maturity
- Confirmation

# Collection Document Sequence Diagram

The following diagram shows the sequence of events and the actual activities.



Also included in the diagram is the status of the document as it proceeds through the system. The status code indicates the point in the life cycle that the document has reached, and is commonly shown on enquiries, and so on.

#### **Collection Document Status Codes**

Status codes applied to collection documents

Status	Code	Status	Code
Statement	02	Matured	40
Unaccepted	05	Confirmed	90
Accepted	10	Written Off	95
Disputed	15	Replaced	96
Included in session	25	Part open	97
Sent to bank	30	Part open/written off	98
Sold to bank (at discount)	32	Cancelled	99
Unpaid	39		

## **Using Review Codes**

Attach a <u>review code</u> to documents that you are processing, but which need to be reviewed, for instance by a manager.

<u>Review codes</u> are set up in the Cash Management <u>Parameters</u> file, under major code PDUS, and are of two types:

#### **User-defined Codes**

You set up the codes you want to use, with an appropriate description against them.

#### **Special Codes**

Although no <u>review codes</u> are set up on the system when you install it, the system will recognise certain codes when you enter them. These codes, with their suggested functions, are listed below:

Review code	Reason	Where Tested
81	Low value collection document	Manual create and part acceptance
82	Transfer <u>Item</u> . Indicated that the document includes an AR <u>item</u> that was previously attached to another unaccepted document	Manual create and part acceptance
83	Manually created, not automatically created	Manual create

84	Linked credit. This document was either created or replaced as the result of a credit ink	The document creation function with Sales Order Processing
85	Terms changed. The value or <u>maturity date</u> of the document was changed after creation	Document maintenance
86	Unpaid document	Unpaid processing

**Note:** It is recommended that you avoid using the special codes for any other reasons than those assigned to them in the table above.

Whether you decide to use these special <u>review codes</u> or whether you prefer to define your own, there is one important feature available when you set up the codes. If you enter **1** in the Sequence field of the <u>review code</u>, the system will prevent any <u>collection document</u> with that code assigned to it from being released and sent to bank until it has been reviewed. Neither can the <u>review code</u> be amended during this time.

Any document with this kind of <u>review code</u> is referred to throughout the system as a <u>held document</u>, and you can enquire on, or produce a report of, <u>held documents</u>.

**Note:** A hold code can, if you want, remain attached to the document after review and release, as the code can still be useful for information and enquiry purposes.

Review codes that are not flagged as hold codes are simply for information.

# Automatic Collection Document Creation [1/CSD]

This task will create <u>collection documents</u> for all statement group codes specified, and can be used instead of creating documents in the Sales Order Processing module.

If the customer is set up to consolidate by <u>due date</u>, this task will create a separate document for each <u>due date</u>. Otherwise, it will create a separate document for each individual invoice.

Settlement discount can be taken up to the discount date, depending on the setting of the Post Discount on Collection Docs. at Maturity <u>flag</u> in Country Specific <u>Parameters</u> in the GL <u>Utilities</u>.

## **Document/Statement Creation Window**

To display this window, select the **Automatic Collection Document Creation** task.

Use this window to select customer and document details for the automatic creation of documents or statements.

#### Fields

#### **Receivables Company**

This field <u>defaults</u> to the company code of the Cash Management company. Only change this field if the documents are to be created from a different Accounts Receivables company (linked to this module).

#### **Doc. Statement Group Codes**

Use these codes to group together customers that are to have statements or documents produced at this <u>session</u>. You can specify up to six groups here.

**Note:** The codes are set up in Names and Addresses using the Accounts Receivable Maintenance tasks.

#### **Document Date**

This field will default to the current date. The discount date (if used) will be calculated from this field.

You may enter or select a new date, as an independent date for the automatic creation start date.

#### **Discount Date**

The date displayed is the document date plus any days before the maturity discount date (set up in the <u>company profile</u> against Document Creation Days). You may enter or select a different date to be used for calculating if discount is allowable.

Use this field only if you are using settlement discounts (the Post Discount on Collection Docs. at Maturity <u>flag</u> is set to **1** in Country-specific <u>Parameters</u> in the General <u>Ledger</u>).

The field is applicable only to collection documents and not to direct debits.

#### **Cut Off Document Days**

Enter the number of days from today before which you intend to create documents.

The system will select any Accounts Receivable <u>items</u> with a creation date less than or equal to the final date given by the number of days entered above.

**Note:** You may enter only one of the four cut-off days/date fields.

#### **Cut Off Document Date**

This is similar to Cut Off Document Days above, but you enter or select the final document date to be selected.

#### **Cut Off Due Days**

This field <u>defaults</u> to the number of days entered in the <u>company profile</u> against Document Creation Days.

You may enter a different number of days. Discount will be allowed if calculated as due, up to and including, the last of these days.

#### **Cut Off Due Date**

This is similar to Cut Off Due Days above, but you enter or select the actual <u>due date</u>.

#### **Payment Method**

If you enter a <u>payment method</u>, Accounts Receivable <u>items</u> with this <u>payment method</u> only will be selected.

Leave this field blank for items to be selected irrespective of customer payment method.

Alternatively, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Select <u>Payment Method</u> pop-up.

#### **Customer Code**

If you enter a valid customer, Accounts Receivable items for this customer only are selected.

Leave this field blank for items to be selected irrespective of customer code.

Alternatively, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Customer Selection pop-up.

#### **Currency Code**

If you enter a valid code, Accounts Receivable items of this currency only are selected.

Leave this field blank for items to be selected irrespective of currency code.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Currency pop-up.

#### **Include Disputed Items**

Use this checkbox as follows:

Checked - To include for selection those items currently in dispute

Unchecked - To exclude from selection those items currently in dispute

Complete the window details and select **Continue (F8)** to create a <u>collection document</u> according to these specifications.

# Manual Collection Document Creation [2/CSD]

This task enables you to manually create a collection document for a selected customer.

## **Document Creation Selection Window**

To display this window select the **Manual Collection Document Creation** task.

Use this window to select the company and customer.

#### **Fields**

#### **Receivables Company**

This field <u>defaults</u> to the company code of the Cash Management company. This need not be changed unless the documents are to be created from a different Accounts Receivables company linked to this module.

#### **Customer Code**

Enter the code of the customer for whom the document is to be created.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Customer Selection pop-up.

Enter or select the company and customer code and Press Enter to display the Document Creation Payment Method window.

# **Document Creation Payment Method Window**

To display this window, enter or select a company and customer code on the Document Creation Selection window and Press Enter.

Use this window to select a <u>payment method</u> and currency for the document, add an external reference and optionally include attached Accounts Receivable <u>items</u>.

#### **Fields**

#### **Payment Method**

Enter the payment method of the document you are creating.

Alternatively, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Select <u>Payment Method</u> pop-up.

#### Include Attached A/R Items

Use this checkbox as follows:

Checked - To include attached Accounts Receivable items

Unchecked - Not to include attached Accounts Receivable items

#### **External Reference**

Enter the reference on the document sent by the customer, if applicable. The reference will be written to the document record.

#### Currency

This field <u>defaults</u> to the customer currency, but can be amended.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Currency pop-up.

Press Enter for a list of all the <u>items</u> eligible for inclusion on the Document Creation <u>Items</u> window.

## **Document Creation Items Window**

To display this window, enter details on the Document Creation <u>Payment Method</u> window and Press Enter.

This window displays a list of all the items eligible for inclusion on a new collection document.

#### <u>Fields</u>

#### O/S Value

The outstanding value displayed is the gross value.

#### **Attached Items**

This shows whether or not the item is attached.

#### Clear Item

Enter **1** to pay the outstanding value displayed for the <u>item</u>. This means you are selecting the <u>item</u> for inclusion in the new document.

You can select as many items as you want in this way.

#### **Transaction Enquiry**

Enter 1 to view the transaction details on the Accounts Receivable enquiry window.

#### **Part Payment**

If you want to include only part of an item's value in the document, enter that part here.

#### **Discount**

If allowed, the settlement discount value will display. If the discount value is highlighted, the discount date has passed.

You can overwrite the value in this field.

#### **Functions**

#### Enter Items (F14)

Use this if the selected customer has an extensive list of <u>items</u> and you would prefer to enter them manually rather than scroll through the <u>items</u>.

The Enter AR Items pop-up is displayed.

#### Adjustments (F19)

Use this to make an adjustment to the line against a <u>reason code</u>. The Enter Adjustments popup is displayed.

Select the required <u>items</u> and select **Create Document (F8)** to display the Maintain Document Details window to create the document.

## Maintain Document Details Window

To display this window, select the <u>items</u> you want to include and select **Create Document (F8)** on the Document Creation Items window.

This window enables you to create the document.

#### **Fields**

#### **Payment Method**

Enter the payment method of the document you want to create.

Alternatively, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Select <u>Payment Method</u> pop-up.

#### **Maturity Date**

Enter or select the date on which the document will mature.

This field <u>defaults</u> to the earliest <u>due date</u> of the invoices included in the payment, as long as the earliest <u>due date</u> is not less than the system date. If it is, the system date will be used instead.

#### Review Code

If you want this document to be reviewed, enter an appropriate code.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Review Code pop-up.

Depending on how the code is set up in the Cash Management <u>Parameters</u> file, this may prevent the document from being sent to the bank until the review takes place. Other <u>review codes</u> may be simply for information and reporting purposes.

#### **Document Date**

Enter or select the creation date of the document. This defaults to the system date.

#### **External Reference**

If the document was generated by the customer, enter the customer's own reference from the document. Otherwise, you can use this field as you want.

#### **Ageing Period**

This field <u>defaults</u> to the current <u>period</u>, but can be amended.

#### **Letter Code**

If you want to send the customer a letter, enter the code of that letter here. The letter will be printed at the next letter run.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Standard Letter pop-up.

#### **Bank Account**

The current bank details for the customer or third party are displayed

**Note:** The format of the bank details will vary depending on the country and on the Bank Details Format set up in <u>Payment Method</u> Maintenance.

#### **User Reference**

Enter your reference for the collection document.

#### **Type of Account**

Enter your **BACS** system account type code or leave this field set to **0** if this is not applicable.

#### **Functions**

#### Text (F20)

Use this to enter text relating to this document.

#### Bank Details (F21)

Use this to display existing bank details if you wish to use another <u>bank account</u> for this document. You may also add new bank details if they are not currently set up.

#### Third Party (F22)

Use this to choose a Third Party if required. This is only available if GL Country-specific Parameter 28 is set to 1.

Select **Update (F8)** to proceed. The document is created and the Document Creation <u>Payment</u> <u>Method</u> window is re-displayed.

## Enter AR Items Pop-up

To display this pop-up, select Enter Items (F14) on the Document Creation Items window.

If your selected customer has an extensive list of <u>items</u>, this pop-up enables you to enter the <u>items</u> manually, and also displays any <u>items</u> already selected. It keeps a running total of the selections you have made. In effect, this list is like the remittance advice.

#### Fields

1T

Enter the <u>transaction type</u> of the <u>item</u> you want to include in the document.

#### Reference

Enter the reference number of the item to be included in the document.

#### **Payment Amount**

Enter the item value.

#### **Discount Amount**

If allowed, the settlement discount value will display. If the discount value is highlighted, the discount date is passed.

You may overwrite the value in this field or enter a value if none is shown.

Select **Update (F8)** to confirm. The Document Creation <u>Items</u> window is re-displayed with the selected <u>items</u>.

## Enter Adjustments Pop-up

To display this pop-up, select Adjustments (F19) on the Document Creation Items window.

Use this pop-up to make an adjustment to a customer's account. Enter reason(s) and value(s) to be written off.

#### **Fields**

#### Reinstate on Account

Enter the total value to be reinstated on the customer's account.

#### Reason

Enter a reason for the write-off.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Reason Code pop-up.

#### **Write Off Values**

Enter the value to be written off.

Select Confirm Adjustments (F8) to make the adjustment.

## Third Party Pop-up

To display this pop-up, select **Third Party (F22)** on the Maintain Document Details window. This is only available if GL Country-specific <u>Parameter</u> 28 is set to **1**.

Use this pop-up to enter details to identify the third party for processing.

#### **Fields**

#### **Third Party**

Enter the relevant third party.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Third Party pop-up.

#### **Third Party Reference**

Enter the reference for the third party.

#### **Bank Account**

If bank details have been selected or the third party has been changed, the <u>bank account</u> is displayed in this field.

#### **Functions**

#### Bank Details (F21)

Use this to display a list of bank details. You may select the account you wish to use with this third party or add new bank details.

When the required values have been entered, Press Enter twice to perform the update.

## Select Third Party Pop-up

To display this pop-up, use the prompt facility on the Third Party field on the Third Party pop-up.

Use this pop-up to select an existing third party for processing. You can also add or maintain a third party.

#### Fields

#### **Position To**

Use this to display the list of third parties from a specified point.

#### **Options**

#### Select

Use this to select the third party required from the list.

#### **Functions**

#### Add/Maintain (F10)

Use this to add a new third party or maintain an existing one.

Select the third party required or select Add/Maintain F10 to add or maintain a third party.

## Third Party Maintenance Header Window

To display this window, select Add/Maintain (F10) on the Select Third Party pop-up.

Use this window to specify the third party to add or maintain.

#### **Fields**

#### **Third Party**

Enter the third party to add or maintain.

Alternatively, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Select Third Party pop-up.

Press Enter to display the Third Party Maintenance Details window.

## Third Party Maintenance Details Window

To display this window, enter a third party code and Press Enter on the Third Party Maintenance Header window.

Use this window to enter or maintain details for the third party.

#### **Fields**

#### Name

Enter the name of the third party.

#### Address

Enter the address of the third party.

#### Signatory

You can optionally enter the signatory.

#### **Post Code**

You can optionally enter the postcode.

#### Country

Enter a valid country code.

Alternatively, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the <u>Parameter</u> Codes pop-up.

#### **Payment Method**

Enter a valid <u>payment method</u>.

Alternatively, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Select <u>Payment Method</u> pop-up.

#### **Active**

Use this checkbox as follows:

Checked - If this third party is active

Unchecked - If this third party is not currently active

Press Enter to add or update the third party details.

# Collection Document Acceptance [3/CSD]

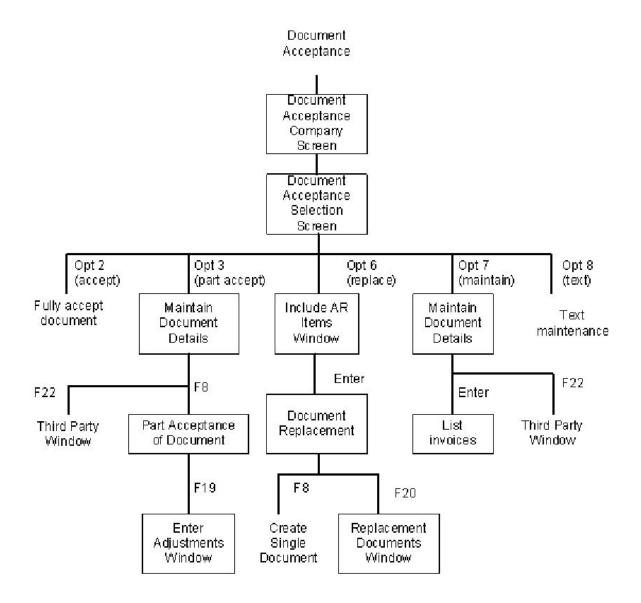
Certain types of <u>collection document</u> require the customer's signature of acceptance before sending to the bank.

To accept the document, select the Acceptance task to register that the document is now available for sending to the bank. The task also allows documents to be maintained prior to acceptance.

The Maintenance task enables you to maintain or cancel documents that have either not previously required customer acceptance, or that have already been accepted.

The Acceptance task deals with documents of status 05, while the Maintenance task deals with documents of status 10 or 15.

The windows are outlined in the following diagram, which shows how to navigate through the task:



# Document Acceptance Company Window

To display this window, select the Collection Document Acceptance task.

Use this window to enter document details for the customer whose documents are to be accepted or maintained.

#### <u>Fields</u>

#### **Receivables Company**

This field defaults to the company code of the Cash Management company.

#### **Discount Date**

The date displayed is the document date plus any days before the <u>maturity date</u> (set up in the <u>company profile</u> against Document Creation Days). You may change this to a different date to be used for calculating if discount is allowable.

This field is used only if you are using settlement discounts (i.e. the Post Discount on Collection Docs. at Maturity <u>flag</u> is set to **1** on Country-specific <u>Parameters</u> in the General <u>Ledger</u>).

#### **Accounting Date**

This field <u>defaults</u> to the current date. You may enter or select a different date to be the acceptance date for the document.

#### **Customer Account Code**

Enter the customer whose documents are to be accepted or maintained.

Leave this field blank for all outstanding draft documents.

Alternatively, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Customer Selection pop-up.

#### **Payment Method**

Enter the <u>payment method</u> of the document to be accepted or maintained.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Payment Method pop-up.

#### **Maturity Date Range**

You can optionally enter a range of maturity dates.

Leave the From date blank to include all documents up to the To date. Alternatively, leave the To date blank to select all documents beyond the From date.

#### **Document Reference**

Enter the document reference of the document you want to accept or maintain.

#### **Invoice Number**

Enter the invoice number of the document you want to accept or maintain.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Item Reference pop-up.

Complete the required fields and Press Enter to display the Document Acceptance Selection window.

## **Document Acceptance Selection Window**

To display this window, complete the required fields and Press Enter on the Document Acceptance Company window.

This window lists the documents that fall within the range requested.

#### **Fields**

#### Select (1)

Enter one of the following:

2 - To fully accept a document or multiple documents

Enter 2 beside all the documents you want to register as fully accepted and then select **Process Selections (F8)**. The documents will be accepted and will disappear from the list of documents available for acceptance.

3 - To partially accept a document or documents

Enter 3 beside all the documents you want to register as partially accepted and then select **Process Selections (F8)**. The Maintain Document Details window is displayed.

6 - To replace a document

Enter 6 beside the document you want to replace and then select **Process Selections (F8)**. The Include AR Items pop-up is displayed, followed by the Document Replacement window.

7 - To maintain a document

Enter **7** beside the document you want to maintain and then select **Process Selections (F8)**. The Maintain Document Details window is displayed.

8 - To maintain text

Enter 8 beside any document and select **Process Selections (F8)** to display any text already entered for that document, or to enter new free format text. Enter the text, or make amendments to existing text and select **Update and Return (F8)** to update.

Enter 3 beside the document or documents you want to register as partially accepted and then select **Process Selections (F8)** to display the Maintain Document Details window.

Alternatively, enter **7** beside the document or documents you want to maintain and then select **Process Selections (F8)** to display the Maintain Document Details window.

## Maintain Document Details Window

To display this window, enter **3** against all the documents you want to register as partially accepted and then select **Process Selections (F8)** on the Document Acceptance Selection window.

Alternatively, enter **7** beside the document you want to maintain on the Document Acceptance Selection window and select **Process Selections (F8)**.

#### **Fields**

#### **Payment Method**

Enter the <u>payment method</u> of the document you want to create.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Payment Method pop-up.

#### **Maturity Date**

Enter or select the date on which the document will mature.

This field <u>defaults</u> to the earliest <u>due date</u> of the invoices included in the payment, as long as the earliest <u>due date</u> is not less than the system date. If it is, the system date will be used instead.

#### **Review Code**

If you want this document to be reviewed, enter a code.

Alternatively, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Select <u>Review Code</u> pop-up.

Depending on how the code is set up in the Cash Management <u>Parameters</u> file, it may prevent the document from being sent to the bank until the review takes place. Other <u>review codes</u> may be simply for information and reporting purposes.

#### **Document Date**

Enter or select the creation date of the document. This <u>defaults</u> to the system date.

#### **External Reference**

Enter the customer's own reference on the document, if the document was generated by the customer. Otherwise, this field may be used as a memo field.

#### **Ageing Period**

This field <u>defaults</u> to the current <u>period</u>, but can be amended.

#### **Letter Code**

If you want to send the customer a letter, enter the code of that letter here. The letter will be printed at the next letter run.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Standard Letter pop-up.

#### **Bank Account**

Enter the customer bank details.

**Note:** The format of the bank details requested above will vary depending on the country and on the setting of the <u>Bank Account</u> Format <u>flag</u> in <u>Payment Method</u> Maintenance.

#### **User Reference**

You can optionally enter a user reference here.

#### Type of Account

You can optionally the account type here.

#### **Functions**

#### Text (F20)

Use this to add or amend document text.

#### Bank Details (F21)

Use this to display or amend the customer's bank account details.

#### Third Party (F22)

Use this to display a pop-up to enable you to enter or amend third party bank details. This is only available if GL Country-specific <u>Parameter</u> 28 is set to **1**.

Enter the details and select Update (F8).

If you selected the document with **3** (Partially Accept), the Part Acceptance of Document window displays the <u>items</u>, values and discount on the document you are part accepting.

If you selected the document with 7 (Maintenance), the Document Maintenance window is displayed.

## Part Acceptance of Document Window

To display this window, enter the details on the Maintain Document Details window and select **Update (F8)** if you selected the document with **3** (Partially Accept).

This window displays the items, values and discounts on the document you are part accepting.

#### **Fields**

#### **Accepted Value**

Enter the value to be accepted for each item.

#### **Discount**

Enter the discount value for each item.

#### **Functions**

#### Adjustments (F19)

Use this for adjustments. The Enter Adjustments pop-up is displayed.

Select **Update (F8)** to accept the values you have specified. The Document Acceptance Company window is re-displayed.

# Enter Adjustments Pop-up

To display this pop-up, select Adjustments (F19) on the Part Acceptance of Document window.

Use this pop-up to make an adjustment to a customer's account. Enter the reason(s) and value(s) to be written off.

Select **Confirm Adjustments (F8)** to confirm your entry, and the document will be partially accepted. The balance not yet accepted will return as an <u>open item</u> on the system.

## Include AR Items Pop-up

To display this pop-up, enter **6** (Replace) beside the document you want to replace on the Document Acceptance Selection window and then select **Process selections** (**F8**).

#### **Fields**

#### Include A/R Items

Use this checkbox as follows:

Checked - If Accounts Receivable documents are to be included in the list of documents on the next window

Unchecked - If Accounts Receivable documents are not to be included in the list of documents on the next window

Press Enter to display the Document Replacement window.

## **Document Replacement Window**

To display this window, Press Enter on the Include AR Items pop-up.

Use this window to select a document (or documents) for processing. The total value of the documents will be calculated.

Create a single document for this total, or create several documents for the total.

#### <u>Fields</u>

#### Select (Sel)

Enter one of the following:

- 1 To select a document or more than one document for processing
- 8 To enter or maintain text against the selected document

The total value of the selected documents will be calculated, and you can then select **Create Document (F8)** to create a single document for this total, or **Create Multiple Documents (F20)**to create several documents for the total.

#### **Functions**

#### **Create Document (F8)**

Select the document(s) you want to replace with a single document, and select this function to see the standard Maintain Document Details window. Enter the details as required and then select **Update (F8)** to update. The system will take you back to the list of documents, where you will see your new document, with a status of 10 (Accepted).

For single replacement not including Accounts Receivable <u>items</u>, the new document will be a copy of the original document, including any discount value.

If Accounts Receivable <u>items</u> are included, the discount of the new document will be a consolidation of all documents, and will include discounts.

#### **Create Multiple Documents (F20)**

The total value of these documents will be calculated, and you can then select this function to create several documents for the total.

Select the document(s) you want to replace, and select **Create Document (F8)** to create a single document. The Maintain Document Details window is displayed.

Alternatively, select the documents you want to replace, and select **Create Multiple Documents (F20)** to create multiple documents. The Replacement Documents pop-up is displayed.

## Replacement Documents Pop-up

To display this pop-up, select **Create Multiple Documents (F20)** on the Document Replacement window.

Several documents are created for the total calculated on the previous window. Each line in the popup can be used to enter details of a new document to be created. Enter the details as required and then Press Enter to update the totals at the bottom of the pop-up, ensuring that the final total equals the value of the original document.

Note: All documents created as a result of replacement will be of status 10 (Accepted).

#### <u>Fields</u>

#### **Maturity Date**

Enter or select the maturity date you want to apply to the document you are creating.

#### Type

Enter the <u>payment method</u> of the document you are creating.

Alternatively, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Select <u>Payment Method</u> pop-up.

#### Value

Enter the value of the new document.

#### Value to Replace

This field displays the value you are replacing.

#### Value Entered

This field displays a running total of the document values entered. It is updated every time you Press Enter.

#### Value Remaining

This field displays a running total of the value left from the original document that is not yet allocated to a new document.

Select **Update (F8)** to create the documents. The Document Replacement window is re-displayed, with the new status 10 (Accepted) documents displayed.

## **Document Maintenance Window**

To display this window, select **Update (F8)** on the Maintain Document Details window if you selected the document with **7** (Maintenance).

This window displays the invoices that compose the document.

#### **Options**

#### Delete (4)

Select **Delete (4)** against any invoice you want to delete from the document.

#### **Functions**

#### Add Items (F10)

Use this to display a list of available <u>items</u> for this customer and <u>payment method</u>. Select from these to add an <u>item</u> to the document.

#### **Delete Document (F11)**

Use this to delete the whole document.

#### Amend (F13)

Use this to return to the Maintain Document Details window to make further amendments.

Maintain the document as required, select **Update** (F8) to update, and then select **Previous** (F12) to return to the Document Acceptance Selection window.

## Add Items to Document Window

To display this window, select Add Items (F10) on the Document Maintenance window.

This window displays the invoices that you may add to the document.

#### **Fields**

#### Select (Sel)

Select one of the following:

Select (1) - To select the required invoices

A/R Enquiry (5) - To view the A/R Item enquiry

Select **Proceed (F8)** to process the selected <u>items</u> and add them to the <u>collection document</u>. A confirmation window will be displayed.

# Collection Document Maintenance [4/CSD]

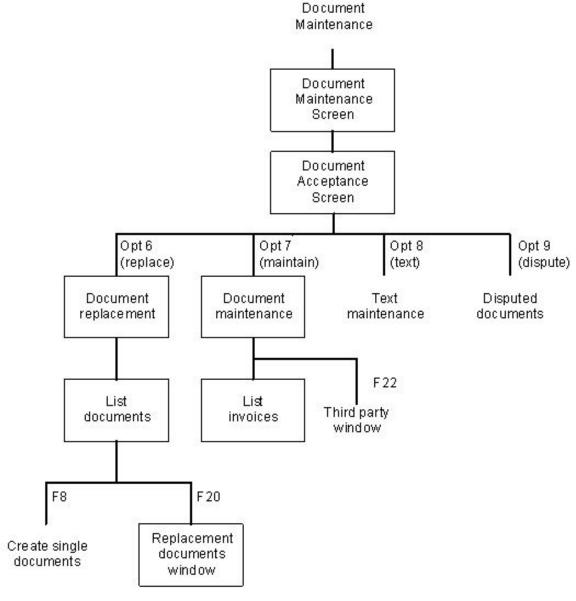
Certain types of <u>collection document</u> require the customer's signature of acceptance before sending to the bank.

Use the Acceptance task to accept the document and register that it is now available for sending to the bank. Using this task you can also maintain documents prior to acceptance.

The Maintenance task enables you to maintain or cancel documents which have either not previously required customer acceptance, or which have already been accepted.

In other words, the Acceptance task deals with documents of status 05, while the Maintenance task deals with documents of status 10 or 15.

The tasks available are outlined in the following diagram:



Many of the windows in this task are the same as those described in the <u>Collection Document</u> Acceptance section, so please see that section for further details.

# **Document Maintenance Company Window**

To display this window, select the Collection Document Maintenance task.

Use this window to enter an invoice number, or a document reference, or the customer account of the document you want to accept or maintain.

#### **Fields**

#### **Receivables Company**

This field <u>defaults</u> to the company code of the Cash Management company, but you can change it.

#### **Discount Date**

This field displays the current date displays plus any days before the <u>maturity date</u> (set up in the <u>company profile</u> against Document Creation days). You may change this to a different date to be used for calculating if discount is allowable.

This field is used only if you are using settlement discounts (i.e. the Post Discount on Collection Docs at Maturity <u>flag</u> is set to **1** within the Country-specific <u>Parameters</u> in the General <u>Ledger</u>).

#### **Accounting Date**

This field displays the current date. You may enter or select a different date to be the accounting date.

#### **Customer Account Code**

Enter the customer whose documents are to be accepted or maintained, or leave this field blank for all outstanding draft documents.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Customer Selection pop-up.

#### **Payment Method**

Enter the <u>payment method</u> of the document to be accepted or maintained.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Payment Method pop-up.

#### **Maturity Date Range**

You can optionally enter a range of <u>maturity dates</u>. Leave the From date blank to include all documents up to the To date. Leave the To date blank to select all documents beyond the From date.

#### **Document Reference**

Enter the reference of the document to accept or maintain.

#### **Invoice Number**

Enter the invoice number of the document you want to accept or maintain.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Item Reference pop-up.

Press Enter. The Document Maintenance Selection window is displayed, listing the documents that fall within the range requested.

## **Document Maintenance Selection Window**

To display this window, complete the Document Maintenance window and press Enter.

This window lists the documents that fall within the range requested.

#### **Fields**

#### Select (1)

Enter one of the following:

6 - To replace the document

Entering **6** against a document enables you either to merge other documents into it, or to split it into several separate documents. The AR <u>Items</u> pop-up is displayed.

7 - To maintain a document

The Maintain Document Details window is displayed.

8 - To maintain text against a document

Enter 8 beside any document and then select **Process Selections (F8)** to display any text already entered for that document, or to enter new free format text. Enter the text and then select **Update and Return (F8)** to update.

9 - To record the document as a disputed item

To record a document as a disputed <u>item</u>, enter **9** beside it and select **Process Selections (F8)**. The Disputed <u>Items</u> pop-up is displayed.

Enter 6 beside the document you want to replace and then select Process Selections (F8) to display the AR <u>Items</u> pop-up.

Alternatively, enter 7 beside the document you want to maintain and then select Process selections (F8) to display the Maintain Document Details window.

## Disputed Items Pop Up

To display this pop-up, enter 9 beside any <u>item</u> and then select Process Selections (F8) on the Document Maintenance Selection window.

Use this pop-up to enter a code defining the reason for the document dispute.

#### <u>Fields</u>

#### **Reason Code**

Enter a valid reason code.

Alternatively, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Select <u>Reason Code</u> pop-up.

Select **Update (F8)**. The Document Maintenance Selection window is re-displayed, on which you will see the <u>reason code</u> you entered, with the other details of the document, between the document reference and the creation date.

# Collection Document Review [5/CSD]

This task enables you to enquire on documents according to their <u>review code</u>. (See the Using <u>Review Codes</u> section for an explanation of the use of <u>review codes</u>.)

You can also specify whether you want to review only those documents whose <u>review codes</u> are preventing them from being released.

Review a document if required, and release it. At the same time you can attach another (or the same) <u>review code</u> to it, and also a letter code.

## **Document Review Window**

To display this window, select the Collection Document Review task.

Use this window to select a range of documents for a <u>review code</u>. You can limit your selection to <u>held documents</u>.

#### <u>Fields</u>

#### **Review Code**

Enter the review code of the documents you want to display.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Review Code pop-up.

#### **Document Status Range**

Enter the range of document statuses you want to see displayed.

You can use the <u>prompt</u> facility on these fields to select from the Select Document Status popup.

#### **Held Documents Only**

Unchecked - To list all the documents that satisfy the other selection criteria you have entered

Checked - To list only held <u>collection documents</u> that satisfy the other selection criteria you have entered

A <u>held document</u> is one which has a <u>review code</u> which prevents a document from being sent to bank until it has been reviewed.

## **Document Review Details Window**

To display this window, enter your selection criteria and Press Enter on the Document Review window.

#### **Fields**

#### Select

Press Enter to see the Document Review Details window which lists all the documents that satisfy your selection criteria. Enter **1** in this field to select the document. The Payment Document Enquiry window is displayed.

Select a document with 1 and Press Enter to see the Payment Document Enquiry window.

# Payment Document Enquiry Window

To display this window, enter 1 against a document on the Document Review Details window and Press Enter.

This window displays details of the selected document. You can choose to enquire on customer bank details, more value details, or document text. The <u>review code</u> may be amended.

The document header details are shown in the upper part of the window with the associated <u>items</u> listed beneath.

#### **Functions**

#### **Customer Bank (F10)**

Use this to display the customer bank details on the Bank Detail pop-up.

#### Previous (F12)

Use this to review or amend the <u>review code</u> or the letter code associated with the document. The Amend <u>Review Codes</u> pop-up is displayed.

#### More Details (F15)

Use this to display discount, commission and interest details on the More Details pop-up.

#### Text (F20)

Use this to display text associated with the document.

Select Exit (F3) to leave the task.

## Bank Detail Pop-up

To display this pop-up, select Customer Bank (F10) on the Payment Document Enquiry window.

Use this pop-up to view the customer's bank details.

Press Enter to return to the previous window.

## Amend Review Codes Pop-up

To display this pop-up, select **Previous (F12)** from the Payment Document Enquiry window.

Use this pop-up to amend the review code and the letter code.

#### **Fields**

#### **Review Code**

Now that this document has been reviewed, its <u>review code</u> is set to blank, and the document can be released.

If you want to enter another (or the same) <u>review code</u>, for informational and reporting purposes, you can optionally do so.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Review Code pop-up.

**Note:** Even if the code you enter is a holding code, it will not hold this document if you release it now.

#### **Letter Code**

You can optionally enter the code of the letter you want to send to this customer at the next letter run.

Alternatively, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Select Standard Letter pop-up.

Select **Release (F8)** to release the document. The <u>review code</u> and letter code you have entered, if any, are attached simultaneously.

## More Details Pop-up

To display this pop-up, select More Details (F15) on the Payment Document Enquiry window.

Use this pop-up to view the discount, commission and interest details for the selected document.

Select **Previous (F12)** to return to the Payment Document Enquiry window.

# Chapter 6 Document Processing – Banks and Other Tasks

The tasks in this section deal with sending documents to the bank, and with certain other facilities, such as unpaid documents.

When you are ready to send or sell your documents to the bank, you must create a <u>session</u>. This is a series of documents to be processed together.

The other tasks dealt with by this section are concerned with managing unpaid documents (Identify and Manage Unpaid Documents), creating <u>direct debits</u>, and processing documents from Accounts Payable.

# Session Creation [11/CSD]

A document must be included in a <u>session</u> before it can be sent to the bank. A <u>session</u> is a series of documents (not <u>direct debits</u>) grouped together to be sent to the bank, and is an important feature of the <u>collection document</u> processing cycle.

Discounts must have been previously taken (at Document Acceptance) on <u>payment methods</u> which take discounts on acceptance. Discounts cannot be taken at the sell to bank collection stage. If sent to bank, however, discounts can be taken.

## Session Creation Window

To display this window, select the <u>Session</u> Creation task.

Use this window to create a <u>session</u> of <u>collection documents</u>.

#### **Fields**

#### **Bank Account for Receipts**

Enter the <u>bank account</u> to be used as the collector account for the documents.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Bank Account pop-up.

If the <u>cash apportionment flag</u> for the bank is **checked**, the system rules will generate the bank postings, based on the <u>cash apportionment</u> table for the <u>payment method</u>.

#### **Cash Apportionment**

Use this checkbox as follows:

Checked - If cash apportionment is to be used within the session

Unchecked - If cash apportionment is not to be used within the session

#### **Accounts Receivable Company**

This field <u>defaults</u> to the company code of the Cash Management company.

#### **Payment Class**

Enter the <u>payment class</u> of the documents to be included in the <u>session</u>.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Payment Class pop-up.

#### **Maturity Days**

Documents will be selected for inclusion in this <u>session</u> if they have a <u>maturity date</u> of the system date **plus** the days entered.

#### **Maturity Date**

Documents will be selected for inclusion in this <u>session</u> if they have a <u>maturity date</u> less than or equal to this date.

#### **Customer Code**

You can optionally enter a customer to select documents for a specific customer.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Customer Selection pop-up.

#### **Document Reference**

A particular document may be included in the session.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Document Payment (From) pop-up.

#### **Session Value**

Documents will be selected in <u>maturity date</u> order up to the value entered here. The sale value is net of any discount.

The value must be **0** if the <u>session</u> type is **Send to bank**.

If a value is entered, and <u>cash apportionment</u> does not apply, the system will check whether this value is acceptable to the <u>bank account</u> selected. This will normally be determined by the approximate amount that is required to be raised. The system will then find the appropriate documents, if available, in order to meet the input value as closely as possible.

#### **Session Type**

Select one of the following:

Send to bank - The documents will be collected by the bank on their <u>maturity date</u>. Discount may be taken where allowed.

Sell to bank - The bank agrees to accept the documents before maturity, and the balance is updated at this point. Charges are incurred for this. No discount will be taken.

#### Currency

The currency <u>defaults</u> to that specified on the Cash Management <u>company profile</u>.

Currencies may not be mixed within a <u>session</u>.

You can use the prompt facility to select from the Select Currency pop-up.

#### Review Code From/To

Documents with a <u>review code</u> within the entered range will be selected for inclusion in this <u>session</u>.

You can use the prompt facility to select from the Select Review Code pop-up.

Select **Process (F8)** to create the <u>session</u>.

# Review and Amend Session [12/CSD]

When the bank receives a <u>session</u> of documents, it may send a response back, listing the <u>items</u> it has received. This task enables you to reconcile this response against the <u>session</u> on the system.

If the <u>session</u> and the bank response fail to reconcile, you can amend the system <u>session</u>, adding any omitted document or deleting an extra one.

The task can also be used as a standard review and amend function if you are not performing a reconciliation.

## Session Review and Change Window

To display this window, select the Review and Amend Session task.

Use this window to select sessions for review and amendment.

#### **Options**

#### Select

Use this to select the sessions for review and amendment.

Select <u>sessions</u> to see a list of the documents within each <u>session</u> displayed on the <u>Session</u> Review and Amend window.

## Session Review and Amend Window

To display this window, make a selection on the <u>Session</u> Review and Change window and Press Enter.

This window displays a list of the documents within the session.

#### **Options**

#### **Amend Charges**

If **Bank Charges per Document** is checked in <u>Bank Account</u> Maintenance, use this to amend charges on the document.

#### Remove

Use this to remove a document.

#### **Functions**

#### Add Item (F10)

Use this to add a document to the session. The Add Document to Session pop-up is displayed.

#### Cancel Session (F11)

Use this to cancel the session.

#### **Display Charges (F15)**

Use this to display interest charge details. Extra columns for Commission and Interest are added to the display when this is selected.

#### Amend Charges (F17)

Use this to amend charges. The Amend <u>Session</u> Charges pop-up is displayed. This function is not available if **Bank charges per document** is checked in <u>Bank Account</u> Maintenance.

If you want to add a document to the <u>session</u>, select **Add <u>Item</u>** (F10).

# Add Document to Session Pop-up

To display this pop-up, select Add Item (F10) on the Session Review and Amend window.

This pop-up enables you to add a document to the session.

#### <u>Fields</u>

#### **Document Reference**

Enter the reference number of a document. The document must be of the same currency, <u>payment method</u>, and so on, as the other documents within the same <u>session</u>.

Alternatively, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Select Document pop-up.

Press Enter to add the document.

## Amend Session Charges Pop-up

This pop-up is displayed when you select **Amend Charges (F17)** on the <u>Session</u> Review and Amend window.

Enter a bank reference and amend values for the selected session.

#### **Fields**

#### **Bank Reference**

When the bank receives a <u>session</u> of documents it will send a response listing the documents it has received. The <u>bank reference</u> is found on this response.

This field is not available if **Bank charges per document** is checked in <u>Bank Account</u> Maintenance

#### Commission

You can amend the bank's commission charge for this session if necessary.

#### **Tax Code**

Enter a tax code to supply the tax rate for commission.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Tax Code pop-up.

This field <u>defaults</u> to the tax code for this <u>session</u>.

#### **Amount**

Enter the tax value for commission.

This field will default to show the tax value calculated from the session's tax code rate.

#### Interest

For **Sell to Bank** documents or <u>sessions</u>, you may enter or amend the bank's interest charge for this <u>session</u> as desired.

#### **Tax Code**

For **Sell to Bank** documents or <u>sessions</u>, you may enter or amend the tax code to supply a tax rate for interest.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Tax Code pop-up.

This field <u>defaults</u> to the tax code for this <u>session</u>.

#### **Amount**

For Sell to Bank documents or sessions, enter or amend the tax value for interest.

This field will default to show the tax value calculated from the session's tax code rate.

#### Sale Value

The net value shows the <u>session</u> value minus commission and interest. Any amendment must maintain this calculation.

Press Enter to update the data.

# Session Listing [13/CSD]

This task produces a report of the details of any session selected.

### List Session Window

To display this window, select the <u>Session</u> Listing task.

#### **Options**

#### Select

Use this to select the session or sessions on which you wish to report.

Select the required <u>session</u> or <u>sessions</u> to submit a batch job, which will produce a single report of all the <u>sessions</u> selected.

# Send Session to Bank [14/CSD]

This task prepares the documentation necessary to send a <u>session</u> of <u>collection documents</u> to the bank.

## Send Session Window

To display this window, select the Send Session to Bank task.

Use this window to select a <u>session</u> or <u>sessions</u> to send to the bank.

#### **Options**

#### Select

Use this to select the session or sessions you wish to send to the bank.

Select the session or sessions you want to send to the bank. Select Exit (F3) to leave the task.

# Bank Acceptance [15/CSD]

When a bank receives a <u>session</u>, it sends back a response which must be registered on the system. This task enables you to register a bank's acceptance of a <u>session</u>, and to reconcile the system record of the <u>session</u> with the bank response.

# Bank Acceptance Selection Window

To display this window, select the Bank Acceptance task.

Use this window to select a <u>session</u> for bank acceptance.

#### **Options**

#### Review

Use this to review and amend a session.

#### Accept

Use this to register a session as accepted by the bank.

The Bank Acceptance window is displayed when Review is selected.

## Bank Acceptance Window

To display this window, take the option to Review a session.

The Bank Acceptance window displays the session's header details.

Use this window to enter a bank reference, review items included in the session, or accept.

#### **Fields**

#### Bank Reference

Enter the reference attached to this <u>session</u> by the bank.

The detail lines on the window above should correspond to the detail lines on the <u>session</u> acknowledgement sent by the bank.

#### **Functions**

#### **Review Session (F22)**

If the details do not correspond exactly, use this to see the <u>Session</u> Review and Amend window, which displays the <u>items</u> included in the <u>session</u>.

Select Accept (F8) to accept the session or select Review Session (F22) to review the session.

## Session Review and Amend Window

To display this window, select Review Session (F22) on the Bank Acceptance window.

When you can see the reason for the discrepancy between the bank response and the <u>items</u> listed here, you can amend the <u>session</u> record by adding a missing <u>item</u> (**Add <u>Item</u>** (**F10**)), deleting an extra <u>item</u>, (with **Remove**), or by cancelling the <u>session</u> altogether (**Delete (F11**)).

#### **Options**

#### **Amend Charges**

If **Bank Charges per Document** is checked in <u>Bank Account</u> Maintenance, use this to amend charges on the document.

#### Remove

Use this to remove a document.

#### **Functions**

#### Add Item (F10)

Use this to add a document to the <u>session</u>. The Add Document to <u>Session</u> pop-up is displayed.

#### Cancel Session (F11)

Use this to cancel the session.

#### **Display Charges (F15)**

Use this to display interest charge details. Extra columns for Commission and Interest are added to the display when this is pressed.

#### Amend Charges (F17)

Use this to amend charges. The Amending <u>Session</u> Charges pop-up is displayed. This function is not available if **Bank Charges per Document** is checked in <u>Bank Account</u> Maintenance.

**Note:** Refer to the Review and Amend <u>Session</u> section for more information on the functions available here.

When you are satisfied that the bank response and the system are reconciled, return to the Bank Acceptance window and select **Accept (F8)**, or to the Bank Acceptance Selection window and select Accept against any <u>sessions</u> to be accepted. A batch job is submitted to mark the <u>sessions</u> as accepted.

# Maturity [16/CSD]

This task submits a job that will mature all documentation due for maturing and will update the <u>bank</u> <u>accounts</u>.

Note: This job can be run as an overnight batch job each night.

Select Confirm Submit (F8) to submit the batch job.

# Confirmation [17/CSD]

This task submits a job that will confirm all documents at bank, and those that have matured. If you have specified a number of <u>Caution Days</u> on your <u>company profile</u>, this will be taken into consideration when calculating which documents have matured.

If you do not use the Maturity task in your procedures, this task will also update the <u>bank accounts</u>. Select Confirm Submit (F8) to submit the batch job.

### Identify Unpaid Documents [31/CSD]

This task enables you to register a document as unpaid.

You can register the whole document as unpaid, certain invoices as unpaid, or part of the document value as unpaid. The unpaid value can then be written off. Bank charges can be re-charged to the customer, and a letter code specified.

Discounts already taken on maturity, sent to bank, or at acceptance will be reverse posted.

A document can be unpaid if its status is sent to bank, sold to bank, matured or confirmed.

### **Unpay Documents Selection Window**

To display this window, select the Identify Unpaid Documents task.

#### **Fields**

#### **Document Reference**

Enter the reference of the document to be unpaid.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Payment Document pop-up.

Press Enter to display the document details on the Unpay Documents window.

### **Unpay Documents Window**

To display this window, Press Enter on the Unpay Documents Selection window.

This window displays the document details with a number of processing functions. You can add values, unpay or part unpay, add a <u>reason code</u>, add text, change customer bank details or cancel a document.

#### **Fields**

#### **Document Value**

This <u>defaults</u> to show the value of the document. You may change this value to part unpay the document.

#### Charge

Enter the amount of any charge made by the bank as a result of rejecting the document.

This charge is not added to the debt owed by the customer unless the Recharge Invoice task is taken when unpaying, using **Unpay Document (F5)**.

#### Tax Code

If tax applies to the bank charges entered, enter an appropriate tax code here.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Tax Code pop-up.

If a tax code is entered, a tax value must also be entered. The value will be validated against the tax code.

#### Value

Enter the tax value applied to the bank charges.

This charge is not added to the debt owed by the customer unless the Recharge Invoice task is taken when unpaying, using the **Unpay Document (F5)**.

#### **Accounting Date**

Enter or select the date that the document is to be recorded as unpaid.

This field <u>defaults</u> to today's date.

#### **Unpaid Reason**

Enter a <u>reason code</u> for any document to be unpaid or part unpaid.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Unpaid Reason Code pop-up.

#### **Disputed Reason**

Enter a disputed reason code.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Reason Code pop-up.

#### **Letter Code**

Enter the code of the letter you want to send to this customer at the next letter run.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Standard Letter pop-up.

#### Select

Select one of the following:

Text - To display text for the document on the Diary Facility Text window

You can add new text, or change the sequence of existing text entries.

Unpay Item - To register the item as unpaid

This is only available is the document is at status 40 or greater and it is not a Direct Debit.

#### **Functions**

#### **Unpay Document (F5)**

Use this to add a charge made to the customer's debt. The Confirm Unpayment pop-up is displayed.

#### Part Unpay (F8)

This is only available if the document status is 40 or greater and it is not a Direct Debit.

To part unpay, you must select at least one <u>item</u> or change the document value. The Confirm Part Unpayment pop-up is displayed.

#### **Customer Bank Details (F10)**

Use this to display the Bank Detail pop-up, showing the banks details for your information.

#### Cancel (F11)

Use this to cancel a document. The Confirm Cancel pop up is displayed.

**Note:** The format of the bank details will vary depending on the country and on the Bank Details Format on <u>Payment Method</u> Maintenance.

To leave the task, select Exit (F3).

### **Diary Facility Text Window**

To display this window, select Text against an <u>item</u> and Press Enter on the Unpay Documents window.

Use this window to add or amend text.

#### **Fields**

#### **Position to Action Date**

If there is a large amount of text, use this field to position to a specific date.

#### **Status**

Select the status of the text you wish to view. Valid values are:

1 - Item cleared

- 2 Text cleared
- 3 Open text
- 4 Action required
- 5 Reviewed/Actioned

You can use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the <u>Parameter</u> Codes pop-up.

#### Recorded By

Enter a valid user profile to view text recorded by that user.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select User Profile pop-up.

#### **Options**

#### Select

Use this to select a line of text to maintain. The Diary Facility Text Maintenance window is displayed.

#### **Delete**

Use this to delete a line of text. No confirmation is required.

#### **Functions**

#### Add New (F6)

Use this to add new text. The Diary Facility Text Maintenance window is displayed.

#### Change Seq./Action Seq. (F15)

Use this to toggle the sequence in which the text is displayed.

Select an existing line or select **Add New (F6)** to display the Diary Facility Text Maintenance window.

### Diary Facility Text Maintenance Window

To display this window, select an existing line or select **Add New (F6)** on the Diary Facility Text window.

Use this window to add, maintain or delete text.

#### **Fields**

#### **Status Code**

Use this to enter the current status of the text. The previous status is displayed on entry. Valid values are:

- 1 Item cleared
- 2 Text cleared

- 3 Open text
- 4 Action required
- 5 Reviewed/Actioned

Alternatively, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the <u>Parameter</u> Codes pop-up.

#### **Action Date**

Enter or select the action date required.

#### **Transaction Level Text**

Enter or amend text as required.

#### Insert n Lines

Enter a number of lines to insert

#### After Line

Enter the starting number from which lines will be inserted.

#### Delete *n* Lines

Enter a number of lines to delete.

#### From Line

Enter the starting number from which lines will be deleted.

Select **Update (F8)** when text maintenance is complete. The text will be re-displayed in the Diary Facility Text window.

### Confirm Unpayment Pop-up

To display this pop-up, select **Unpay Document (F5)** on the Unpay Documents window.

Use this pop-up to add charges to be invoiced.

#### **Fields**

#### Recharge Invoice

Checked - To specify charges that will be invoiced to the customer

Unchecked - If you do not want to enter charges

Select Confirm (F5) to update the document as unpaid.

If you do not want to enter charges, the Unpay Documents Selection window is re-displayed.

If you do want to enter charges, the Recharge Invoice pop-up is displayed.

### Recharge Invoice Pop-up

To display this pop-up, check the Recharge Invoice field on the Confirm Unpayment pop-up and select **Confirm (F5)** (do not Press Enter).

Use this pop-up to specify the value to recharge.

#### **Fields**

#### **Item Reference**

You must enter a reference for the charges here.

#### **Recharge Amount**

Enter the total value of bank charges to be charged back to the customer.

#### **Tax Code**

Enter the tax code to be applied to the recharge total. This must correspond to the actual value in the Recharge Tax field.

Alternatively, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Select Tax Code pop-up.

#### **Recharge Tax**

Enter the tax value of the recharge. This must correspond to the tax rate of the tax code entered.

#### Reason Code

You must enter the relevant reason code.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Reason Code pop-up.

Enter the charges and then select **Confirm (F8)** to confirm. The Unpay Documents Selection window is re-displayed.

### Confirm Part Unpayment Pop-up

To display this pop-up, enter the value to be unpaid in the Document Value field on the Unpay Documents window and select **Part Unpay (F8)**.

The availability of the Part Unpay function depends on the status of the document. When you have part unpaid a document, the Recharge Invoice pop-up is displayed, as it is for fully unpaid documents.

#### **Fields**

#### **Recharge Invoice**

Checked - To specify charges that will be invoiced to the customer

Unchecked - If you do not wish to specify charges

Select Confirm (F8) to part unpay, or Write Off (F19) to write off the unpaid amount.

If you do not want to enter charges, the Unpay Documents Selection window is re-displayed.

If you do want to enter charges, the Recharge Invoice pop-up is displayed.

### Confirm Cancel Pop-up

To display this pop-up, select Cancel Document (F11).

#### **Fields**

#### Recharge Invoice

Check this to specify charges that will be invoiced to the customer.

Uncheck if you do not wish to specify charges.

Select Confirm (F8) to cancel.

If you do not want to enter charges, the Unpay Documents Selection window is re-displayed.

If you do want to enter charges, the Recharge Invoice pop-up is displayed.

# Manage Unpaid Documents [32/CSD]

This task enables you to maintain and amend documents that are currently unpaid. You can:

- Review document details and customer bank details
- Cancel a document
- Reinstate a document
- Replace a document, either merging several documents together or creating multiple documents from a single document
- Write off a document

### Manage Unpaids Company Selection Window

To display this window, select the Manage Unpaid Documents task.

#### **Fields**

#### **Accounts Receivable Company**

Enter the company of the unpaid document.

#### **Customer Code**

Enter the customer code of the unpaid document. Leave this blank to see unpaids for all customers.

Press Enter to display the Select Payment Document window.

### Select Payment Document Window

To display this window, Press Enter on the Manage Unpaids Company Selection window.

A list of all available documents is displayed.

#### **Options**

#### Select

Use this to select the document you require.

Select the document you want to maintain to display the Manage Unpaids window.

### Manage Unpaids Window

To display this window, select the document you want to maintain on the Select Payment Document window.

The document's details are displayed, along with functions to manage the unpaid details.

#### <u>Fields</u>

#### **Unpaid Reason**

Enter a reason code for any document to be unpaid or part unpaid.

Alternatively, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Select Unpaid Reason Code pop-up.

#### **Disputed Reason**

Enter a disputed reason code.

Alternatively, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Select <u>Reason Code</u> pop-up.

#### **Letter Code**

Enter the code of the letter you want to send to this customer at the next letter run.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Standard Letter pop-up.

#### **Accounting Date**

Enter or select the accounting date.

#### **Functions**

#### **Customer Bank Details (F10)**

Use this to display the customer's bank details.

**Note:** The format of the bank details will vary depending on the country and on the Bank Details Format on <u>Payment Method</u> Maintenance.

#### Cancel (F11)

Use this to delete the document.

#### Reinstate (F15)

Use this to reinstate the cancelled document.

#### Replace (F18)

Use this to replace a document. The Confirm Replacement pop-up is displayed.

#### Write Off (F19)

Use this to write off a document. The Document Write-off pop-up is displayed.

#### Text (F20)

Use this to enter text.

Select **Replace** (F18), and confirm by selecting **Replace** (F18) again. The Document Replacement pop-up is displayed.

### Document Replacement Pop-up

To display this pop-up, select **Replace (F18)** on the Manage Unpaids window.

Use this pop-up to specify the AR items to be included.

#### **Fields**

#### Include A/R Items

Checked - If Accounts Receivable items are to be included in the list that follows

Unchecked - If Accounts Receivable items are not to be included in the list that follows

Press Enter to display the Document Replacement window.

### **Document Replacement Window**

To display this window, Press Enter on the Document Replacement pop-up.

Use this window to select one or more documents to replace. You can replace your selected document or documents with a single document or with several documents.

**Note:** The standard Maintain Document Details window is displayed. For more information, see an example of this window in the Manual Creation section.

#### **Fields**

#### Select (Sel)

Select one of the following:

Select - To select a document or documents to be replaced

The software calculates the total value of the documents you have selected.

Text - To enter text against a line

#### **Functions**

#### **Create Document (F8)**

Use this to create a single document for the total value of documents you have selected.

#### **Create Multiple Documents (F20)**

Use this to create several documents for the total value of documents you have selected. The Replacement Documents pop-up is displayed.

Select either Create Document (F8) or Create Multiple Documents (F20).

When you have created the new document, this window is re-displayed. Select **Update (F8)** to update. The system re-displays the list of documents, where you will see your new document with a status of 10 (Accepted).

### Replacement Documents Pop-up

To display this pop-up, select **Create Multiple Documents (F20)** on the Document Replacement window.

Enter dates and values for the replacement document.

At update, the system re-displays the list of documents, where you will see the new status 10 (Accepted) documents displayed.

Note: All documents created as a result of replacement will be of status 10 (Accepted).

#### **Fields**

#### **Maturity Date**

Enter or select the maturity date you want to apply to the document you are creating.

#### **Type**

Enter the <u>payment method</u> of the document you are creating.

Alternatively, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Select <u>Payment Method</u> pop-up.

#### Value

Enter the value of the new document.

#### Value to Replace

This field displays the value to be replaced.

#### Value Entered

This field displays a running total of the document values entered. It is updated every time **OK** is selected.

#### Value Remaining

This field displays a running total of the value left from the original document which is not yet allocated to a new document.

Enter the details as required and Press Enter to update the totals at the bottom of the pop-up. Ensure that the final total equals the value of the original document. Then select **Update (F8)** to create the documents.

# Document Write-off Pop-up

To display this pop-up, select Write Off (F19) on the Manage Unpaids window.

#### Fields

#### Reason Code

Enter a code representing the reason for the write off.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Reason Code pop-up.

Enter the <u>reason code</u> required and Press Enter to proceed with the write off.

# Direct Debit Creation [33/CSD]

This task creates <u>direct debits</u> in the same way that Automatic Creation creates <u>collection</u> <u>documents</u>.

The main difference between the tasks is that Automatic Creation creates separate documents either for each <u>due date</u> or for each invoice, depending on a customer setting. <u>Direct Debit</u> Creation creates one debit for all invoices up to the cut-off <u>due date</u>.

In contrast to Automatic Creation, this task does not update the General <u>Ledger</u> until the debit has matured

### **Direct Debit Creation Window**

To display this window, select the <u>Direct Debit</u> Creation task.

#### **Fields**

#### **Receivables Company**

This field <u>defaults</u> to the company code of the Cash Management company. The field need not be changed unless the documents are to be created from a different Accounts Receivables company linked to this module.

#### **Doc. Statement Group Codes**

These codes are used to group together customers that are to have <u>direct debits</u> set up. You can specify up to six groups here.

#### **Cut Off Maturity Days**

Any number displayed will have been set up at in the <u>company profile</u> against Document Creation Days. You can enter the number of days from today for which you want to create <u>direct debits</u>.

#### **Cut Off Maturity Date**

This field is an alternative to the Cut Off Maturity Days field, where you can enter or select the date to be the last date to create <u>direct debits</u>.

#### **Discount Date**

The date displayed is the document date plus any <u>default</u> cut off maturity days. You may change this to an earlier or later date to be used for calculating if discount is allowable.

This field is used only if you are using settlement discounts (i.e. the Post Discount on Collection Docs at Maturity setting in Country-specific Profiles in the General Ledger is set to 1).

The discount held against the invoice will be taken if the invoice discount date is less than or equal to the discount date entered here.

Where displayed, this field is mandatory.

#### **Mature on Discount Date**

Use this checkbox as follows:

Unchecked - If the payment due date (i.e. the maturity date) must override the discount date

Checked - If you are using the discount date as the <u>direct debit</u> run day and this will override any <u>maturity date</u> displayed

This is important if you have amended the Cut Off Maturity Days or Date.

#### **Payment Method**

You can optionally enter a valid method.

Alternatively, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Select <u>Payment Method</u> pop-up.

To create a <u>direct debit</u> payment, the <u>payment method</u> entered here must be set up as a <u>direct debit</u> method on the <u>parameter</u> file (type DRDB).

#### **Customer Code**

You can optionally enter a valid customer.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Customer Selection pop-up.

If you enter or select a customer, Accounts Receivable <u>items</u> for this customer only will be selected.

#### **Currency code**

You can optionally enter a valid code.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Currency pop-up.

If you enter or select a currency, Accounts Receivable <u>items</u> of this currency only will be selected.

#### **Include Disputed Items**

Checked - To include in the selection those items currently in dispute

Unchecked - Not to include disputed items

Select Continue (F8) to create the direct debit.

# AP Document Maintenance [34/CSD]

This task enables you to amend a document <u>due date</u> if it has not yet been cleared or cancelled.

### AP Document Maintenance Selection Window

To display this window, select the AP Document Maintenance task.

Use this window to select references for maintenance.

#### **Fields**

Use one of the following fields.

#### **External Reference**

Enter the external reference. This is the payment reference created by AP, and can be found using the AP enquiry system.

#### **Internal Reference**

Enter the internal reference. This is the reference allocated by the <u>collection document</u> system, when the document is created.

Press Enter to display the document details on the AP Document Maintenance window.

### **AP Document Maintenance Window**

To display this window, Press Enter on the AP Document Maintenance Selection window.

Use this window to view the document details, and if required, amend the <u>due date</u>.

#### **Fields**

#### **Enter Amended Due Date**

If you want to change the <u>due date</u>, enter or select the new date here.

Press Enter to update.

# AP Document Clearance [35/CSD]

This task enables you to clear and confirm the payment of <u>collection documents</u> issued by Accounts Payable.

### Clear AP Documents Window

To display this window, select the AP Document Clearance task.

Use this window to select Accounts Payable documents for the bank account.

#### **Fields**

#### **Bank Account**

Enter the General <u>Ledger bank account</u> into which payment is to be made, or from which payment is to be received.

Alternatively, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Select <u>Bank Account</u> pop-up.

#### **Bank Reference**

Enter the bank reference to specify which documents you want to clear.

#### **Cut-Off Date**

Enter or select the maturity date up to which documents are considered for clearance.

#### Currency

Enter the <u>currency code</u> of the documents which are to be cleared.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Currency pop-up.

#### **Accounting Date**

Enter or select the accounting date required.

#### **Posting Period**

Enter the posting period.

Press Enter to see a list of all documents fulfilling the selection criteria.

### Clear AP Documents List

#### **Fields**

#### Selection (Untitled)

Select 1 against the lines you wish to process.

Select 8 to modify the value date of a line. This will only be available if GL country-specific <u>parameter</u> 29 is turned on.

#### **Functions**

#### **Process Selected items (F8)**

Use this to process the items you have selected.

#### Due Dates (F13)

Use this to toggle between <u>due dates</u> and value dates. This will only be available if GL country-specific <u>parameter</u> 29 is turned on.

Press Enter to view the total value of the selected items.

Select Process Selected Items (F8) to process the items selected.

For lines selected with 1, the Clear AP Documents Confirmation window will be displayed.

For lines selected with 8, the Value Date window will be displayed. When **Update (F8)** is selected on the Value Date window, the Clear AP Documents Confirmation window is displayed.

### Clear AP Documents Confirmation Window

To display this window, select Process Selected Items (F8) on the Clear AP Documents window.

Use this window to confirm the details for the batch and update.

#### **Functions**

#### **Update Batch (F8)**

Use this to confirm the selected values.

#### **Enter Charges (F10)**

Use this to enter charges. A window showing charges entry lines will be displayed.

#### Override Bills to Base (F17)

Use this to override the <u>exchange rate</u> between the bills selected and the <u>base currency</u>. The Override Conversion <u>Parameters</u> pop up will be displayed.

To update immediately, select Update Batch (F8) to confirm your selected batch.

To enter charges first, select Enter **Charges (F10)** to bring up the Clear AP Documents Confirmation window showing the charges entry lines.

### Clear AP Documents Confirmation Details Window

To display this window, select Enter **Charges (F10)** on the Clear AP Documents Confirmation window.

Use this window to select the account, value charged and bank charge reference and perform the update.

#### Fields

#### Account

Enter the account number to which this line of charges is to be sent.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select an account number.

#### **Amount**

Enter the value relevant to this line of charges.

#### Bank Charge Ref

Enter the relevant charge reference here.

Select **Confirm Charges (F8)** to update the entries you have made.

# Banking Engine Collections Creation [36/CSD]

This task creates collections to be process through the Banking Engine in the same way that <u>Direct Debit</u> Creation creates <u>direct debits</u>

One collection is created for all invoices up to the cut-off date.

On the customer's account the invoices to be paid are replaced by the <u>collection document</u> transaction type CD.

No General Ledger updates occur until the collection has matured.

If any amendments are to be made to the collection then option 4/CSD may be used to cancel the collection, or add or remove <u>items</u> from the collection.

### **Banking Engine Creation Window**

To display this window, select the Banking Engine Collections Creation task.

#### **Fields**

#### Receivables Company

This field <u>defaults</u> to the company code of the Cash Management company. The field need not be changed unless the documents are to be created from a different Accounts Receivables company linked to this module.

#### **Doc. Statement Group Codes**

These codes are used to group together customers that are to have collections processed through the banking engine. You can specify up to six groups here.

#### **Cut Off Maturity Days**

Any number displayed will have been set up at in the <u>company profile</u> against Document Creation Days. You can enter the number of days from today for which you want to create collections.

#### **Cut Off Maturity Date**

This field is an alternative to the Cut Off Maturity Days field, where you can enter or select the date to be the last date to create collections.

#### **Discount Date**

The date displayed is the document date plus any <u>default</u> cut off maturity days. You may change this to an earlier or later date to be used for calculating if discount is allowable.

This field is used only if you are using settlement discounts (i.e. the Post Discount on Collection Docs at Maturity setting in Country-specific Profiles in the General <u>Ledger</u> is set to **1**).

The discount held against the invoice will be taken if the invoice discount date is less than or equal to the discount date entered here.

Where displayed, this field is mandatory.

#### **Mature on Discount Date**

Use this checkbox as follows:

Unchecked - If the payment due date (i.e. the maturity date) must override the discount date

Checked - If you are using the discount date as the collection run day and this will override any maturity date displayed

This is important if you have amended the Cut Off Maturity Days or Date.

#### **Payment Method**

You can optionally enter a valid method.

Alternatively, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Select <u>Payment Method</u> pop-up.

To create a banking engine collection, the <u>payment method</u> entered here must be set up as a banking engine <u>payment method</u> on the <u>parameter</u> file (type BEPM).

#### **Customer Code**

You can optionally enter a valid customer.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Customer Selection pop-up.

If you enter or select a customer, Accounts Receivable <u>items</u> for this customer only will be selected.

#### **Currency code**

You can optionally enter a currency code.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Currency pop-up.

If you enter or select a currency, Accounts Receivable <u>items</u> of this currency only will be selected.

#### **Include Disputed Items**

Checked - To include in the selection those items currently in dispute

Unchecked - Not to include disputed items

Select **Continue** (F8) to generate collections for the banking engine.

# Electronic Direct Debit Creation [37/CSD]

This task creates electronic <u>direct debits</u> the same way that <u>Direct Debit</u> Creation creates <u>direct debits</u>

One collection is created for all invoices up to the cut-off date.

On the customer's account the invoices to be paid are replaced by the <u>collection document</u> <u>transaction type</u> CD.

No General Ledger updates occur until the collection has matured.

A <u>payment class</u> should be created for electronic <u>direct debits</u> to ensure there is no mix of <u>payment classes</u> in a bank <u>session</u>.

If any amendments are to be made to the collection then option 4/CSD may be used to cancel the collection, or add or remove items from the collection.

### **Electronic Direct Debit Creation Window**

To display this window, select the Electronic Direct Debit Creation task.

#### **Fields**

#### Receivables Company

This field <u>defaults</u> to the company code of the Cash Management company. The field need not be changed unless the documents are to be created from a different Accounts Receivables company linked to this module.

#### **Doc. Statement Group Codes**

These codes are used to group together customers that are to have electronic <u>direct debits</u> set up. You can specify up to six groups here.

#### **Cut Off Maturity Days**

Any number displayed will have been set up at in the <u>company profile</u> against Document Creation Days. You can enter the number of days from today for which you want to create collections.

#### **Cut Off Maturity Date**

This field is an alternative to the Cut Off Maturity Days field, where you can enter or select the date to be the last date to create collections.

#### **Discount Date**

The date displayed is the document date plus any <u>default</u> cut off maturity days. You may change this to an earlier or later date to be used for calculating if discount is allowable.

This field is used only if you are using settlement discounts (i.e. the Post Discount on Collection Docs at Maturity setting in Country-specific Profiles in the General <u>Ledger</u> is set to **1**).

The discount held against the invoice will be taken if the invoice discount date is less than or equal to the discount date entered here.

Where displayed, this field is mandatory.

#### **Mature on Discount Date**

Use this checkbox as follows:

Unchecked - If the payment due date (i.e. the maturity date) must override the discount date

Checked - If you are using the discount date as the collection run day and this will override any maturity date displayed

This is important if you have amended the Cut Off Maturity Days or Date.

#### **Payment Method**

You can optionally enter a valid method.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Payment Method pop-up.

To create an electronic <u>direct debit</u>, the <u>payment method</u> entered here must be set up as an electronic <u>direct debit payment method</u> on the <u>parameter</u> file (type SDDB).

#### **Customer Code**

You can optionally enter a valid customer.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Customer Selection pop-up.

If you enter or select a customer, Accounts Receivable <u>items</u> for this customer only will be selected.

#### **Currency code**

A <u>currency code</u> must be entered. For SEPA <u>direct debits</u> this must be euros, for other electronic <u>direct debits</u> this is not necessary

Alternatively, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Select Currency pop-up.

If you enter or select a currency, Accounts Receivable <u>items</u> of this currency only will be selected.

#### **Include Disputed Items**

Checked - To include in the selection those items currently in dispute

Unchecked - Not to include disputed items

Select **Continue** (F8) to create the electronic <u>direct debit</u> collections.

# Chapter 7 Document Processing – Printing Tasks

The tasks in this section deal with printing and review of collection documents and collection letters

### Print Collection Documents [1/CSDM]

This task will print previously unprinted statements or <u>collection documents</u> according to the selection criteria entered on the Print Statements and Payment Documents window.

### Print Statements and Payment Documents Window

To display this window, select the Print Collection Documents task.

Use this window to select the documents you want to print.

#### **Fields**

#### Receivables Company

You can optionally enter the Accounts Receivable company for which the documentation is to be printed.

This field <u>defaults</u> to the company code of the Cash Management company.

#### **Customer No**

You can optionally enter a customer code if you want to print documentation for a particular customer.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Customer Selection pop-up.

Leave this field blank to print all customer documentation.

#### Due Date From/To

You can optionally enter a range of dates for the selection of documentation to be printed.

Leave both these fields blank to print all documentation regardless of date.

08BDocument Processing – Printing Tasks	
elect <b>Print (F8)</b> to produce the printouts.	

# Reprint Collection Documents [2/CSDM]

This task enables you to re-print statements and documents that have already been printed. A reprint audit report is also available. The format of the document will depend on the specified <u>payment</u> <u>method</u>.

Documents that have not previously been printed are not valid for reprinting.

### Payment Document Reprint Window

To display this window, select the Reprint Collection Documents task.

#### **Fields**

#### **Document Number**

Enter the number of the document you want to re-print.

Alternatively, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Select Payment Document window.

Enter or select a document and then Press Enter to display the Payment Document Enquiry window.

### Payment Document Enquiry Window

To display this window, enter or select a document and then Press Enter on the Payment Document Reprint window.

Use this window to re-print the selected document.

#### **Functions**

#### Reprint (F8)

Use this to re-print the document.

#### **Customer Bank (F10)**

Use this to review the bank details on the Bank Detail pop-up.

#### More Details (F15)

Use this to display the discount, commission and charges details on the More Details pop-up.

#### Text (F20)

Use this to display text associated with the document.

Select Reprint (F8) to produce the re-printed documents.

### Print Collection Document Letters [3/CSDM]

This task will print the letters of the documents you select. Only documents which have a letter code attached can have a letter printed.

Once the letter has been printed, the letter code for that document is set to blank.

### Print Customer Letters Window

To display this window, select the Print Collection Document Letters task.

Use this window to specify the letters you want to print.

#### <u>Fields</u>

#### **Receivables Company**

Enter the Accounts Receivable company for the customer or customers whose letters are to be printed.

#### Letter Code From/To

You can optionally enter the range of letter codes you want printed.

Only valid codes can be entered. To select one code only, enter that code in the From field and leave the To field blank.

Leave both of these fields blank to select all codes.

You can use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Select Standard Letter pop-up.

#### Maturity Date From/To

You can optionally enter or select the range of maturity dates for which letters are to be printed.

Leave both of these fields blank to select regardless of maturity date.

#### Creation Date From/To

You can optionally enter or select the range of creation dates for which letters are to be printed.

Leave both of these fields blank to select regardless of creation date.

#### **Print Document Details**

Use this checkbox as follows:

Unchecked - To print only the document details with the letter

Checked - To print the Accounts Receivable item details as well as the document details

**Note:** You can use the Collection Document Review task to set the letter code for a document.

Press Enter and then select **Process (F8)** to submit a job to print the letters.

# Cash Collection Letters [4/CSDM]

This task prepares a letter informing the customer that a <u>collection document</u>, or more than one document, is about to be sent to the bank.

### Cash Collection Letters Window

To display this window, select the Cash Collection Letters task.

Use this window to specify the letters you want to print.

#### **Fields**

#### **Accounts Receivable Company**

Enter the Accounts Receivable company of the customers to whom letters are to be sent.

#### **Letter Code**

Enter the code of the letter to be printed.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Standard Letter pop-up.

#### **Payment Class**

Enter the payment class for which letters are to be printed.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Payment Class pop-up.

#### **Maturity Days**

Enter the number of days before the documents mature.

#### **Customer Code**

You can optionally enter a customer code to produce a letter for a particular customer.

Alternatively, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Customer Selection pop-up.

Leave this field blank to select all customers.

#### Include Docs in Review

Unchecked (default) - Not to produce letters in review

Checked - To produce letters for customers whose documents still need reviewing

#### Currency

Enter the currency for which you want letters to be produced.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Currency pop-up.

This field defaults to the base currency.

Select Process (F8) to submit a job to produce a letter for each selected customer. The software sets a flag to ensure that a document included in a letter will not be included in any future letter.

# Chase Unaccepted Collection Documents [5/CSDM]

If a customer does not accept a document, it may be necessary to send a Dunning (chase) letter. This task will send a standard letter whose format and wording will depend on the code you select. The letter will include a list of documents that were created before the specified cut-off date but have not yet been accepted.

The document value is shown net of any discount.

The report is designed to be printed on pre-printed stationery.

### Chase Unaccepted Documents Window

To display this window, select the Chase Unaccepted Collection Documents task.

Use this window to specify the chase letters you want printed.

#### **Fields**

#### **Receivables Company**

Enter the Accounts Receivable company of the customers to whom letters are to be sent.

#### **Dunning Letter Code**

Enter the code of the <u>Dunning letter</u> you want to send. The code must be a valid code set up in the Accounts Receivable module.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Standard Letter pop-up.

#### **Cut Off Days since Creation**

Enter the number of days since creation for documents to be included in the selection.

#### Creation Dates From/To

All customers with outstanding documents created between the dates entered here will receive a letter, as long as all other selection criteria are satisfied.

#### Maturity Dates From/To

All customers with outstanding documents which matured between the dates entered here will receive a letter, as long as all other selection criteria are satisfied.

Press Enter to submit a job to print the letter.

### Payment Reminders [6/CSDM]

This task enables you to list details of any documents that are currently being held for review. Document values are shown net of any discount.

# Payment Reminders Window

To display this window, select the Payment Reminders task.

Use this window to specify the payment reminders you want to print.

#### **Fields**

#### Receivables Company

Enter the Accounts Receivable company of the customers to whom reminders are to be sent.

#### **Dunning Ltr Code**

Enter the code of the **Dunning letter** you want to send.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Standard Letter pop-up.

#### **Cut Off Days to Due Date**

Enter the number of days to due date for documents to be included in the selection.

#### **Cut Off Due Date**

Enter the latest <u>due date</u> of documents to be included.

#### **Payment Method**

Enter the payment method.

Alternatively, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Select <u>Payment Method</u> pop-up.

#### **Include Disputed Items**

Checked - To include reference to disputed items in the reminder

Unchecked - Not to include reference to disputed items in the reminder

Press Enter to submit a job to print the payment reminders.

# List Collection Documents for Review [7/CSDM]

This task enables you to produce a report of documents according to their review code.

You can also specify whether you want to review only those documents whose <u>review codes</u> are preventing them from being released.

### List Documents for Review Window

To display this window, select the List Collection Documents for Review task.

Use this window to specify which documents you want included on the report.

#### <u>Fields</u>

#### Review Code From/To

You can optionally enter the range of review codes to be included in the review.

Leave both fields blank to select all review codes.

You can use the prompt facility to select from the Select Review Code pop-up.

#### **Document Status From/To**

Enter the range of statuses to be included in the review.

You can use the prompt facility to select from the Select Document Status pop-up.

#### **Maturity Date Range**

Enter or select the range of maturity dates of documents which are to be included in the report.

#### **Held Documents Only**

Any <u>review code</u> can be set up as a holding <u>review code</u>. This is a code that prevents any document to which it is attached from being released and sent to bank. Such a document is said to be a held document.

Unchecked - To include documents whether held or not

Checked - If <u>held documents</u> only are to be included in the review

Press Enter to submit a job to produce the listing

### Chapter 8 Enquiries and Reports

Cash Management provides a flexible enquiry facility, which enables you to enter the Cash Management <u>Item</u> Enquiry window from almost any point. A separate Enquire on <u>Collection</u> <u>Document</u> task is available.

The <u>Transaction Type</u>, Reference and <u>Bank Account</u> tasks are dealt with together. This is because, although different information is entered on the initial windows, these tasks all lead to the same network of Cash Management <u>Item</u> Enquiry windows. These initial windows are included first, then the series of enquiry windows which are accessed by functions, and finally the <u>collection document</u> windows.

#### **Transaction** Reports

#### **Bank Account**

This lists all <u>transactions</u> posted to the <u>bank accounts</u>, with opening and closing balances.

#### **Currency by Bank Account**

This lists transactions by period, details in prime currency within bank account order.

#### **Items** by **Bank Reference**

This lists transactions in bank reference order.

#### **Scan Report**

This lists <u>transactions</u> whose descriptions contain a specified string of characters.

#### **Provisional Cash**

This lists provisional cash postings.

Summary Reports

#### Statement of Balance

This lists balances in prime and base currencies.

Audit and Control Reports

#### **Daily Movements**

This lists all <u>transactions</u> for each bank, with opening and closing balances.

#### **Audit Report**

This lists transactions in Cash Management reference order.

#### Suspended **Items**

This lists all suspended and provisional cash transactions.

#### **Unpresented Items**

This lists <u>transactions</u> which have not been cleared by bank reconciliation.

#### **Bank Statements**

This lists bank statements with cleared transactions.

**Collection Document Reports** 

#### **Document**

This lists document details.

#### **Due Date**

This lists outstanding documents.

#### Cash Flow

This lists documents within ageing periods.

#### **Reprint Audit**

This prints a copy of the audit report.

#### **Write Off Audit**

This lists all documents which have been written off from a specified date.

### Transaction, Reference and Account Enquiries

This section deals with the three linked Cash Management enquiries, which are:

<u>Transaction Type</u> Enquiry

This enables you to select your  $\underline{transaction}$  for review from a list of  $\underline{transactions}$  of the same type.

Reference Enquiry

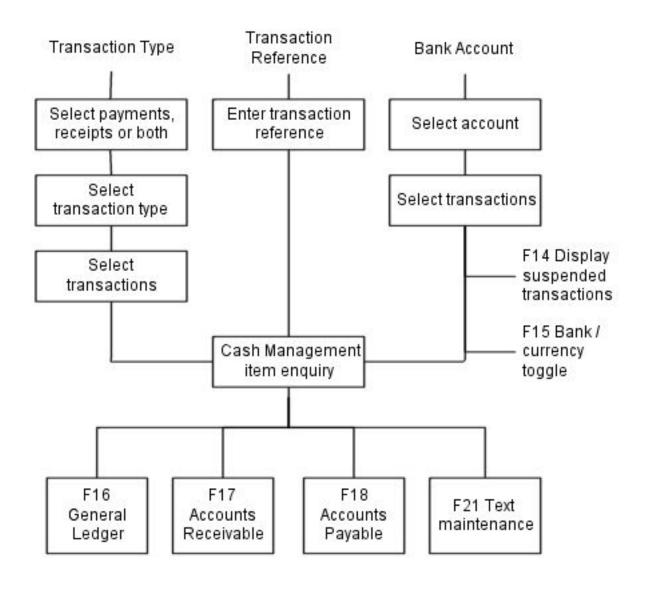
This enables you to review the transaction if you know its Cash Management reference number.

Bank Account Enquiry

This enables you to select the <u>transaction</u> for review from a list of <u>transactions</u> in the same account.

#### **Transaction** Enquiries Diagram

The structure of this section is clarified by the following diagram, which shows the extent to which the three enquiries (<u>Transaction Type</u>, Reference and <u>Bank Account</u> enquiries) are interrelated:



# Enquire by Transaction Type [1/CSE, 11/CSZ]

# Enquiry by Transaction Type Payments or Receipts Window

To display this window, select the Enquire by <u>Transaction Type</u> task.

Use this window to select your <u>transaction</u> for review from a list of <u>transactions</u> of the same type.

#### **Fields**

#### **Payments or Receipts**

Select one of the following:

Payments (P) - To display a list of payments

Receipts (R) - To display receipts

Both (blank) - To display all items

Press Enter to display the list of <u>transaction types</u> on the Enquiry by <u>Transaction Type</u> Selection window.

### **Enquiry by Transaction Type Selection Window**

To display this window, Press Enter on the Enquiry by <u>Transaction Type</u> Payments or Receipts window.

Use this window to select the required <u>transaction type</u> and optionally choose to limit the date or <u>period</u> range.

#### **Options**

#### Select

Use this to select the transaction type or types required.

#### **Fields**

#### **Date Ranges Required?**

Check this to restrict the selection by specifying a date or <u>period</u> range. If this is **checked**, when you Press Enter, the Date or <u>Period</u> window will enable you to select the dates or <u>periods</u> for the enquiry.

Select the <u>transaction type</u> or types required. The Enquiry by <u>Transaction Type</u> Detail window is displayed if you have not checked the Date Ranges Required? Field.

### Enquiry by Transaction Type Date Ranges Window

To display this window, check the Date Ranges Required? Field on the Enquiry by <u>Transaction Type</u> Selection window.

Use this window to select a range of dates or a range of periods.

#### **Fields**

#### Date From/To

Enter or select the From and To dates for the transactions you wish to view.

#### Period From/To

Enter the From and To periods for the transaction you wish to view.

Press Enter when you have entered the required range.

### **Enquiry by Transaction Type Details Window**

To display this window, select a <u>transaction type</u> or types and optionally enter a date or <u>period</u> range.

#### **Options**

#### Select

Use this to display details of the transaction.

Select a transaction to display the Item Enquiry window as described below.

## Enquire by Cash Reference [2/CSE, 12/CSZ]

### Item Enquiry Selection Window

To display this window, select the Enquire by Cash Reference task.

Use this window to select the cash book reference of the item on which you want to enquire.

#### **Fields**

#### Cash Reference

Enter the cash book reference of the specific item upon which you wish to enquire.

#### **Functions**

#### Page Down/Page Up

Use these to scroll to another cash reference.

Press Enter to display the Item Enquiry window as described below.

# Enquire by Bank Account [3/CSE, 13/CSZ]

### Bank Account Enquiry Selection Window

To display this window, select the Enquire by Bank Account task.

Use this window to select the bank account on which you want to enquire.

#### **Options**

#### **Account Details**

Use this to display a list of the <u>transactions</u> posted to this account. Select a <u>transaction</u> to display the Cash Management <u>Item</u> Enquiry window.

#### **Period Details**

Use this to display a list of the <u>periods</u> for the account. Select a <u>period</u> to display a list of all the <u>transactions</u> for that <u>period</u> and then select a <u>transaction</u> to display the Cash Management <u>Item</u> Enquiry window.

#### **Bank Reference Details**

Use this to display a list of <u>transactions</u> posted to this account in the <u>Bank Account</u> Enquiry window. A Position To field is available for enquiring on <u>bank reference</u> when using this enquiry option.

Select a route through the selection windows until you select the <u>transaction</u> you want. The details are displayed on the Cash Management <u>Item</u> Enquiry window.

### Item Enquiry Window

Select a route through the selection windows until you select the <u>transaction</u> you want. The details are displayed on the Cash Management <u>Item</u> Enquiry window.

This is the main window within the enquiry system. It displays all the main details of the <u>item</u>, and can lead to the General <u>Ledger</u>, Accounts Payable or Accounts Receivable enquiry systems.

Use Page Up/Page Down to move through the items.

#### **Functions**

#### **GL Transactions (F16)**

Use this to display the relevant details on the <u>Transaction</u> Enquiry window from the General Ledger.

#### AR Enquiry (F17)

Use this to display the relevant details on the Customer Enquiry - <u>Item</u> Details window from Accounts Receivable.

**Note:** This function is only available for certain types of <u>transaction</u>.

#### AP Enquiry (F18)

Use this to display the relevant details on the <u>Session</u> Enquiry - <u>Transactions</u> by <u>Session</u> window from Accounts Payable.

**Note:** This function is only available for certain types of <u>transaction</u>.

#### GL Suspense (F19)

Use this to display the GL suspense account details on the <u>Transaction</u> Enquiry window from the General <u>Ledger</u>.

**Note:** This function is only available for certain types of <u>transaction</u>.

#### Maintain Text (F21)

Use this to add, <u>edit</u> or delete text for this <u>transaction</u> on the Maintain Text for Cash <u>Transaction</u> window.

Select Previous (F12) to return to the previous window.

# Enquire on Collection Document [4/CSE]

This task provides you with a full enquiry facility for collection documents.

### Payment Document Enquiry Selection Window

To display this window, select the Enquire on Collection Document task.

Use this window to select by invoice reference, document reference, or customer details.

#### **Fields**

#### **Document Source**

Select one of the following:

A/R

A/P

#### **Source Company**

Enter the code of the company to which the customer is defined.

#### **Customer/Supplier**

Enter the customer whose documents you want to enquire on.

Alternatively, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Customer Selection or Supplier Selection pop-up.

#### **Payment Method**

Enter the <u>payment method</u> of the <u>collection documents</u> on which you want to enquire.

Alternatively, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Select <u>Payment Method</u> pop-up.

#### **Document Status From/To**

Enter the range of statuses on which you want to enquire.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Document Status pop-up.

#### **Bank Account**

Enter the account for the document(s) on which you want to enquire.

Alternatively, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Select <u>Bank Account</u> pop-up.

#### **Due Date**

Enter or select the <u>due date</u> of the documents on which you want to enquire.

#### **Document Reference**

Enter the reference of the document on which you want to enquire.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Payment Document pop-up.

#### **Invoice Reference**

Enter an invoice included on the collection document for enquiry.

**Note:** If you want to see a list of all <u>collection documents</u> for the company, simply select a document source and Press Enter. A list of documents will be displayed, each with a selection field beside it.

If you have selected a particular document, its details are displayed on the Payment Document Enquiry window.

If you have specified a range of documents, they are listed on the Select Payment Document window. Select one of them to display its details on the Payment Document Enquiry window.

### Select Payment Document Window

To display this window, select a range of documents or all documents on the Payment Document Enquiry Selection window and Press Enter.

A list of collection documents is displayed.

#### **Options**

#### Select

Use this to select the document to display on the Payment Document Enquiry window.

Select the document you require in order to see its full details on the Payment Document Enquiry window.

## Payment Document Enquiry Window

To display this window, select a document on the Payment Document Enquiry Selection window or on the Select Payment Document window and Press Enter.

Use this window to display the full details of the document.

### **Functions**

### **Customer Bank (F10)**

Use this to see the bank details for this document on the Bank Detail pop-up.

**Note:** The format of the bank details will vary depending on the country and on the Bank Details Format on <u>Payment Method</u> Maintenance.

### **Options**

### More Details (F15)

Use this to display interest and commission charge details on the More Details pop-up.

### Text (F20)

Use this to display the Maintain Text for Cash <u>Transaction</u> window.

Select More Details (F15) to see the More Details pop-up.

### More Details Pop-up

To display this pop-up, select **More Details (F15)** on the Payment Document Enquiry window.

This pop-up displays the <u>interest and commission</u> charge details.

Select Previous (F12) to return to the Payment Document Enquiry window.

## Enquire by Bank Reference [5/CSE]

This task allows the entry of a <u>Bank Account</u> and <u>Bank Reference</u>. A <u>prompt</u> program gives you the facility to <u>prompt</u> on <u>Bank Reference</u> once the bank is selected, using either a complete or a partial reference.

The detail of the <u>transaction</u> is then displayed, with the option to enter another <u>Bank Reference</u> and display the details.

On each <u>transaction</u>, functions give access to the AP and AR <u>Item</u> enquiries, the GL <u>Transaction</u> enquiry and the GL Suspense enquiry. In addition, you can add text to an <u>item</u>.

### Bank Reference Enquiry Selection Window

To display this window, select the Enquire by Bank Reference task.

### **Fields**

### **Bank Account**

You must enter a bank account.

Alternatively, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Select <u>Bank Account</u> pop-up.

#### **Bank Reference**

You can optionally enter a bank reference.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Bank Reference pop-up.

If you made a unique entry in the <u>Bank Reference</u> field, you will see the <u>Bank Reference</u> Enquiry Details window when you Press Enter.

If there are multiple <u>transactions</u> with the same <u>Bank Reference</u>, you will see the Enquire by <u>Bank Reference</u> Enquiry - Reference Selection window when you Press Enter.

### Bank Reference Enquiry - Reference Selection Window

To display this window, make an entry in the <u>Bank Account</u> field on the <u>Bank Reference</u> Enquiry Selection window, enter or select the <u>Bank Reference</u> field and Press Enter. This window is only displayed if there are multiple <u>transactions</u> with the same <u>Bank Reference</u>.

### **Options**

### Select

Use this to select a line and display the details on the Bank Reference Enquiry Details window.

## Bank Reference Enquiry Details Window

To display this window, enter a <u>bank account</u> and <u>bank reference</u> in the <u>Bank Reference</u> Enquiry Selection window and Press Enter.

Alternatively, enter a <u>bank account</u> on the <u>Bank Reference</u> Enquiry Selection window, Press Enter and select a <u>bank reference</u> from the <u>Bank Reference</u> Enquiry - Reference Selection window.

### <u>Fields</u>

### **Next Reference**

You can enter a bank reference here to re-display the window with details of that reference.

You can use Page Up and Page Down to move through the records.

### **Functions**

### **GL Transactions (F16)**

Use this to display the relevant details on the <u>Transaction</u> Enquiry window from the General <u>Ledger</u>.

### AR Enquiry (F17)

Use this to display the relevant details on the Customer Enquiry - <u>Item</u> Details window from Accounts Receivable.

**Note:** This function is only available for certain types of <u>transaction</u>.

### AP Enquiry (F18)

Use this to display the relevant details on the <u>Session</u> Enquiry - <u>Transactions</u> by <u>Session</u> window from Accounts Payable.

**Note:** This function is only available for certain types of <u>transaction</u>.

### GL Suspense (F19)

Use this to display the GL suspense account details on the <u>Transaction</u> Enquiry window from the General <u>Ledger</u>.

**Note:** This function is only available for certain types of <u>transaction</u>.

### **Maintain Text (F21)**

Use this to add, <u>edit</u> or delete text for this <u>transaction</u> on the Maintain Text for Cash <u>Transaction</u> window.

## Report of Transactions by Bank Account [11/CSE]

This report lists all <u>transactions</u> posted to the <u>bank accounts</u>, with opening and closing balances. It is used to confirm <u>period</u> values posted to Cash Management and to the General <u>Ledger</u>.

### Cash Management by Bank Account Window

To display this window, select the Report of <u>Transactions</u> by <u>Bank Account</u> task.

Use this window to specify the transactions you want.

### **Fields**

### **Bank Account Code**

Enter the General <u>Ledger bank account</u>. The field <u>defaults</u> to the account on the <u>company profile</u>. You may also enter \***ALL** to report <u>transactions</u> for all banks.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Bank Account pop-up.

#### Period From/To

This <u>defaults</u> to the current <u>period</u>, but can be changed. Blank out the fields to select by calendar date.

The To <u>period</u> must not be less than the current <u>period</u>.

#### Date From/To

You can enter or select dates if period numbers are not selected.

Press Enter and then select Print Report (F8) to submit a job to produce the report.

## Report of Transactions by Currency [12/CSE]

This report lists <u>transactions</u> by <u>period</u>, and prints the details in prime (<u>transaction</u>) currency within <u>bank account</u> order. It is used to confirm <u>period</u> values posted to Cash Management and to General <u>Ledger</u>.

### Currency by Bank Account Window

To display this window, select the Report of <u>Transactions</u> by Currency task.

Use this window to specify the details you want printed.

### **Fields**

### **Bank Account Code**

You can optionally enter a General Ledger bank account to limit the report.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Bank Account pop-up.

Leave this blank to print all accounts.

### **Period From/Period To**

You can optionally enter period values to limit the report.

Leave these fields blank to print details for all periods for which data is held.

### **Transaction Source**

You can optionally enter one of the following:

A - Accounts Payable

- C Cash Management
- G General Ledger
- S Accounts Receivable

Alternatively, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Select <u>Transaction</u> Source pop-up.

Leave this field blank to select all transactions.

### **Transaction Type**

You can optionally enter a transaction type.

Alternatively, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Select <u>Item</u> Type pop-up.

### **Currency Code**

You can optionally enter a valid <u>currency code</u>.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Currency pop-up.

Leave this field blank to select all currencies.

Press Enter and then select Print Report (F8) to submit a job to produce the report.

## Report of Transactions by Bank Reference [13/CSE]

For a selected <u>bank account</u>, <u>transactions</u> can be printed in <u>bank reference</u> sequence. The report may be used to resolve a problem or query on the <u>bank account</u>.

### List Items by Bank Reference Window

Select the Report of <u>Transactions</u> by <u>Bank Reference</u> task to display the List <u>Items</u> by <u>Bank Reference</u> window.

Use this window to specify the details you want printed.

### **Fields**

### **Bank Account**

Enter the General <u>Ledger bank account</u> for which the report is to be printed. The report can print details only for a single account.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Bank Account pop-up.

### **Payment Type**

You can optionally enter the <u>payment method</u> for which you want to print the report. This field <u>defaults</u> to ALL, to print all records regardless of <u>payment method</u>.

Alternatively, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Select <u>Payment Method</u> pop-up.

### From/To Bank Reference

You can optionally enter the range of references (e.g. cheque numbers) to be printed. Leave these fields blank to include all references.

### Include Blank References

Checked - To include items with blank references

Unchecked - To exclude items with blank references

Select **Print Report (F8)** to submit a job to produce the report.

## Transaction Scan Report [14/CSE]

This report lists <u>transactions</u> whose description contains the character string specified. This facility could be used to review all cash <u>transactions</u> for a particular supplier or customer.

## Scan Report Window

To display this window, select the <u>Transaction</u> Scan Report task.

Use this window to specify the details you want printed.

### **Fields**

### Search Field

The report will include all <u>transactions</u> that contain a word beginning with the search characters in the <u>transaction</u> description field.

### From/To Date

Enter a date range. Both dates must be entered or selected, and are inclusive.

Press Enter and then select Confirm (F8) to submit a job to produce the report.

## Statement of Bank Balances [21/CSE]

This report prints, for each <u>bank account</u>, the balance in bank and base currencies. It is used to manage the company's cash resources, for example in creditor payment policy or in bank-to-bank transfers.

### Statement of Bank Balances Window

To display this window, select the Statement of Bank Balances task.

Use this window to specify the details you want printed.

### **Fields**

### **Bank Code**

This is the bank in which accounts are held, not the <u>bank account</u>. It <u>defaults</u> to \*ALL but you can optionally enter a code to limit the report to a single bank.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Bank Code pop-up.

#### **Date**

You can optionally enter or select the date at which the balance is to be reported. It <u>defaults</u> to today's date. If the <u>period</u> calendar has been set up, the date must be within the calendar (the <u>period</u> in which today's date falls is displayed).

### **Period**

If a <u>period</u> calendar has been set up, enter the <u>period</u> number for this report.

### Print in 000's

Use this checkbox as follows:

Unchecked - If values are not to be printed to the nearest thousand units of the relevant currencies but the exact value is to be printed

Checked - If values are to be printed to the nearest thousand units of the relevant currencies

### **Bank Account Types**

All <u>bank account</u> types set up on the <u>parameter</u> file are here displayed as <u>default</u> types. You can use **Page Down** to see any not on display, and you can delete any that are not required.

Press Enter and then select **Print Report (F8)** to submit a job to produce the report.

## Report on Collection Documents [41/CSE]

This report produces a list of all <u>collection documents</u> on the system, showing the value (net of any discount), currency, <u>maturity date</u> etc. of each document, and listing the invoices included on it. It provides a reconciliation between the net and gross document values.

### Bills Report Window

To display this window, select the Report on Collection Documents task.

Use this window to specify the details you want printed.

### **Fields**

### **Accounts Receivables Company**

This field <u>defaults</u> to the current company, but can be changed.

### Customer

You can optionally enter a customer

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Customer Selection pop-up.

Leave this field blank to select all customers.

### **Document Status Range**

You can optionally enter the status range to select documents of particular statuses.

Alternatively, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Select Document Status pop-up.

### **Maturity Date Range**

You can optionally enter or select a range of maturity dates

Leave these fields blank to select documents regardless of maturity date.

### **Bank Account**

You can optionally enter an account.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Bank Account pop-up.

Leave this field blank to select all accounts.

### **Document Reference**

If you want to select documents by reference, enter that reference here.

### **Invoice Reference**

If you want to select the document associated with a particular invoice, enter the invoice reference here.

### Sequence

Leave this checkbox checked.

### **Print Bank Details**

Use this checkbox as follows:

Checked - To print the bank details on the report

Unchecked - Not to print the back details on the report

Press Enter to validate your entries and then select Submit Report (F8) to submit a job to produce the report.

# Report on Collection Documents by Due Date [42/CSE]

This report produces a list of outstanding <u>collection documents</u> according to various selection criteria.

The report is printed separately for each source company. Subtotals are printed for each supplier/currency, with report subtotals by currency.

### Bills of Exchange Due Report Window

To display this window, select the Report on Collection Documents by Due Date task.

Use this window to specify the details you want printed.

### **Fields**

### **Maturity Date**

Any <u>collection documents</u> with a <u>maturity date</u> earlier than the date entered or selected here will be included on the report. Leave the date blank to include all documents.

### **Bank Account**

You can optionally enter a single bank account to limit selection to this bank account.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Bank Account pop-up.

Leave this field blank for all accounts.

### Include

### **Unaccepted Bills**

Use this checkbox as follows:

Checked - To include unaccepted documents

Unchecked - To exclude unaccepted documents

### **Outstanding Bills**

Use this checkbox as follows:

Checked - To include outstanding documents

Unchecked - To exclude outstanding documents

### Sent to Bank

Enter one of the following:

Checked - To include documents sent to bank

Unchecked - To exclude documents sent to bank

### Sold to Bank

Enter one of the following:

Checked - To include documents sold to bank

Unchecked - To exclude documents sold to bank

### **Accounts Receivable Company**

Enter a single Accounts Receivable company to limit selection to one company.

Leave this field blank to include all companies linked to this Cash Management company.

Press Enter to submit a job to produce the report.

## Report on Collection Document Cash Flow [43/CSE]

This task submits a batch job to print the <u>collection document</u> Cash Flow report. The report prints only those documents which match the selection criteria, excluding Unaccepted (status 05) and Matured (status 40) documents, and, depending on your selection, including or excluding Sold (status 32) documents.

The report is printed separately for each <u>bank account</u> within each company. For each <u>bank account</u>, documents are printed by currency for each customer/supplier.

### Cash Flow Report Window

To display this window, select the Report on Collection Document Cash Flow task.

Use this window to specify the details you want printed.

### **Fields**

### **Report Date**

Enter or select the start date for the cash flow projection. Documents are aged by reference to the ageing <u>periods</u>.

### **Cut-Off Date**

Any <u>collection documents</u> with a <u>maturity date</u> earlier than the date entered or selected here will be included on the report. Leave the date blank to include all documents.

### **Bank Account**

You can optionally enter a single <u>bank account</u> to limit selection to this <u>bank account</u>. (If a single <u>bank account</u> is specified, the report will include only accepted documents.)

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Bank Account pop-up.

Leave this field blank for all accounts.

### Currency

Enter a <u>currency code</u> to limit the report to a single currency.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Currency pop-up.

Leave this field blank to include all currencies.

### Include

### **Accounts Payable Bills**

Use this checkbox as follows:

Checked - To include Accounts Payable documents

Unchecked - To exclude Accounts Payable documents

### **Accounts Payable Company**

You can optionally enter a single Accounts Payable company to limit selection to one company.

Leave this field blank to include all companies linked to this Cash Management company.

### Accounts Receivable Bills

Use this checkbox as follows:

Checked - To include Accounts Receivable documents

Unchecked - To exclude Accounts Receivable documents

### Accts. Receiv. Company

Enter a single Accounts Receivable company to limit selection to one company.

Leave this field blank to include all companies linked to this Cash Management company.

### Sold to Bank

Use this checkbox as follows:

Checked - To include documents sold to bank (status 35, 37)

Unchecked - To exclude documents sold to bank

### **Enter Ageing Periods**

### Period 1/Period 2/Period 3/Period 4

Enter the number of days to form each ageing <u>period</u>, from the report date.

### **Print Summary Report Only**

Use this checkbox as follows:

Checked - To produce a summary report

Unchecked - To produce a detailed report

Press Enter to submit a job to produce the report.

# Audit Report of Collection Document Reprints [44/CSE]

This report reprints the original <u>collection document</u> print details, listing the reference, customer, date printed and user for each document.

### Bill Reprint Audit Window

To display this window, select the Audit Report of Collection Document Reprints task.

Use this window to specify the details you want printed.

### <u>Fields</u>

### User ID

You can optionally enter the user ID for which the report is to produce details.

Leave this field blank to produce details for all users.

### Date Reprinted From/To

You can optionally enter or select the date range for which the report is to produce details.

Leave these fields blank to produce details for all dates.

Select Submit Report (F8) to submit a job to produce the report.

# Audit Report of Collection Document Write-Off [45/CSE]

This task produces a list of all documents written off by the selected user between certain dates. The document reference, customer, value (net of any discount), and write-off details (<u>reason code</u>, time etc.) are included.

### Bill Write Off Audit Window

To display this window, select the Audit Report of Collection Document Write-off task.

Use this window to specify the details you want printed.

### **Fields**

### User ID

You can optionally enter the user ID for which the report is to produce details.

Leave this field blank to produce details for all users.

#### Write-off Date From/To

You can optionally enter or select the date range for which the report is to produce details.

Leave these fields blank to produce details for all dates.

### Write-off Value

In order to be included on the report, a document's value must exceed the value entered here.

Select Submit Report (F8) to submit a job to produce the report.

## Payment Prelist [61/CSE]

This task produces a list of all miscellaneous payment requests for the <u>bank account</u> specified, for which documentation has not yet been produced.

## Payment Prelist Window

To display this window, select the **Payment Prelist** task.

Use this window to specify the payments you want to print.

### **Fields**

### **Bank Account Code**

Enter the bank <u>account code</u> for the documentation you want to print.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Bank Account pop-up.

### **Payment Method**

Enter the <u>payment method</u> of the documentation you want to print. The method you choose must not be defined as a type of <u>collection document</u>.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Payment Method pop-up.

Enter the account and payment method and select Print Report (F8) to print the report.

## Cancelled Payments Report [62/CSE]

This task produces a listing of all miscellaneous payments cancelled for the <u>bank account</u> and <u>payment method</u> specified.

## Cancelled Payments Report Window

To display this window, select the Cancelled Payments Report task.

Use this window to specify the cancelled payments you want printed.

### **Fields**

### **Bank Account Code**

Enter the bank account code for the documentation you want to print.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Bank Account pop-up.

### **Payment Method**

Enter the <u>payment method</u> of the documentation you want to print. The method you choose must not be defined as a type of <u>collection document</u>.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Payment Method pop-up.

Enter the account and payment method and select Print Report (F8) to print the report.

## **Chapter 9** Italian Function

These functions are developed specifically for Italy:

### Portfolio Enhancements (Third Party Tracking)

If a customer settles a debt by passing on a third party's <u>collection document</u>, the debt is cleared from the customer's account, but must be collected from the third party.

These tasks enable you to define the third party and its account details when manually creating a document.

### **Value Dates**

Normally, when cash receipts and payments have been created, the Cash Management and General <u>Ledger</u> bank balance is updated, and the customer or supplier debt downdated. Bank reconciliation then clears the <u>transactions</u>.

This task projects the bank balance based on when receipts and payments are expected to clear the bank account. This date is the Value Date.

### **Bank Account Format**

The Italian bank format window for domestic accounts is used wherever domestic <u>bank account</u> details are displayed or maintained. This format displays a check digit. The <u>account code</u> field is 12 alphanumeric characters

## Maintain Third Parties [1/CSZ]

If a customer settles a debt by passing on a third party's <u>collection document</u>, the debt is cleared from the customer's account, but must be collected from the third party.

This task enables you to create or maintain a third party customer.

### Third Party Maintenance Selection Window

To display this window, select the Maintain Third Parties task.

Use this window to create or maintain a third party customer.

### **Fields**

### **Third Party**

Enter the third party to be maintained or created.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Third Party pop-up.

Press Enter to display the Third Party Maintenance Details window.

### Third Party Maintenance Details Window

Use this window to enter the details of the third party.

### **Fields**

### Name

Enter the third party's name.

### **Address**

Enter the address. The first line is mandatory.

### **Signatory**

Enter the name of the signatory if required

### **Post Code**

Enter the postcode of the third party.

### Country

You must enter the third party's country.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Parameter Codes pop-up.

### **Payment Method**

Enter the required <u>payment method</u>. This is validated against the <u>Payment Method</u> Maintenance file.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Payment Method pop-up.

### **Unpaid Cambraille/Unpaid Riba/Recalled Documents**

Each of these has two fields, whose function is described below.

### Count

This field is for output only, and is a performance indicator, which shows how many documents have been accepted or recalled (unpaid but not through the third party's fault) for this third party.

### **Errors**

This field shows the number of documents which have been unpaid for this third party, and enables you to reduce the count shown on the <u>third party documents</u> report. This value cannot be greater than the count field.

### Active?

Use this checkbox as follows:

Unchecked - If documents from this third party cannot be accepted in payment of an invoice Checked - If documents from this third party can be accepted in payment of an invoice

### **Functions**

### Delete (F11)

Use this to delete a third party. You cannot delete a third party that is already attached to a document.

Press Enter to update. Depending on the <u>payment method</u> chosen, the Bank Details pop-up may now appear. The format of this pop-up varies according to the setting of Country Specific <u>Parameter</u> 047 in GL <u>Utilities</u>. It also depends on the setting of the <u>Bank Account</u> Format <u>flag</u> in <u>Payment Method</u> Maintenance, for the chosen <u>default payment method</u> for this supplier.

**Note:** Because the name and address are maintained on this panel, they are not displayed in the Bank Details pop-up in either format.

## Maintain Value Dates Table [2/CSZ]

The date on which a payment is cleared by a bank is often a number of days later than the document date. A cheque, for example, can be cleared three days after it is written.

If you want to update your records on an estimated clearing date rather than on the document date, you can enter the number of days' difference in a value date table.

The value date table enables you to enter this number of days based on all of the following:

- Payment method
- Bank account
- <u>Ledger</u> (Accounts Payable, Accounts Receivable and Cash Management)
- Location (i.e. in place/out of place/international)

### Value Date Table Maintenance Selection Window

To display this window, select the Maintain Value Dates Table task.

### **Fields**

### **Payment Method**

Enter a valid payment method.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Payment Method pop-up.

### **Bank Account**

Enter the account code of the bank.

Alternatively, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Select <u>Bank Account</u> pop-up.

Press Enter to display the Value Date Table Maintenance window.

### Value Date Table Maintenance Details Window

To display this window, Press Enter on the Value Date Table Maintenance Selection window. Use this window to set up the value days.

### **Fields**

### **Days Basis**

Enter one of the following:

Working (1) - The value date calculation is based on working days as defined in the General <u>Ledger</u> calendar, which takes weekends etc. into account.

Calendar (2) - The value date calculation is based on calendar days, ignoring weekends etc.

### In Place

Enter the number of days for the value date of a local payment (typically, one within the same city) for Accounts Payable, Cash Management and Accounts Receivable.

### **Out of Place**

Enter the number of days for the value date of a wider area payment for Accounts Payable, Cash Management and Accounts Receivable.

### International

Enter the number of days for the value date of an international payment for Accounts Payable, Cash Management and Accounts Receivable.

**Note:** The number of days in the three <u>items</u> above is the number of days from the document date to the bank clearance day.

Select **Update** (F8) to update the details entered.

## Report on Third Parties [31/CSZ]

This task lists all third parties and details for the company in question. Details are laid out as for the maintenance window.

Select Confirm Submit (F8) to submit a batch job to produce the report.

## Report on Value Dates Table [32/CSZ]

This task enables you to print all value dates for the company, laid out as on the maintenance window.

Select Confirm Submit (F8) to submit a batch job to produce the report.

## Chapter 10 Utilities

Cash Management provides a number of <u>utilities</u> for data verification and re-organisation. These <u>utilities</u> are not required during normal operation.

**Caution:** All the procedures that are provided here require great care and some require a detailed technical understanding of the application. It is recommended that these tasks be carried out with the advice of your accounts manager, computer manager, or software supplier.

- Company tasks enable you to copy data from an existing company to a new one, delete a company, and maintain single or group companies.
- Verification/Rebuild tasks reconcile Cash Management balances to <u>transactions</u> and to the attached General <u>Ledger</u>.
- Other The first of these tasks enables you to reprint cheques as necessary.
- Initialise Bank Balances When you are installing Cash Management, this task sets the balances
  of a new Cash Management application to match those of the General <u>Ledger</u> to which it is to be
  attached
- <u>Miscellaneous Creditor</u> Name Scan Rebuild When you are installing Cash Management, this task reviews the database to build the search and select facility available in Cash Management.

### **Important**

The financial applications maintain balances using subsystems.

Certain <u>Utilities</u> tasks also maintain these balances, and if you enter one of these tasks while a subsystem is active, a message will inform you that you are prevented from using the task.

All subsystems must therefore be stopped before such utilities can be used.

### **Template Companies**

If you need to maintain several companies all in the same way, the easiest way is to set up all the companies as a group, using another company defined in the General <u>Ledger</u> as a template company. When you maintain the template company, the related group companies will be updated in the same way.

## Create Company [1/CSU]

This task enables you to create a new company by copying the contents of an existing company. The new company can be created in any library, not just in the same library as the existing company. Only the static data in a company can be copied; the copied data will not include <u>transactions</u> or balances.

**Caution:** Note that this task will only copy companies. If you want to create a separate company from scratch, this should be done using the <a href="Company Profile">Company Profile</a> Maintenance task.

## Create New Company Window

To display this window, select the Create Company task.

Use this window to specify the source and target companies.

### **Fields**

### **From Company**

Enter the company to provide the source details.

### To Company

Enter the company to which the source details are to be copied.

Enter the company codes of the existing company and the new company and then Press Enter. The Country Code field is then displayed:

### **Country Code**

Enter the country code of the new company.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Parameter Codes pop-up.

**Caution:** If the company being copied is in a different country from the new company, you may have to amend the currency. To do this, when the copy is done, update the Currency field in the <a href="mailto:company">company</a> profile.

Press Enter to display the Dependent Companies pop-up, asking you to enter the General <u>Ledger</u> company to which this Cash Management company is to be attached.

### Dependent Companies Pop-up

To display this pop-up, Press Enter on the Create New Company window.

Use this pop-up to enter the GL company to which the new company is to be attached.

### Field

### GL Co.

Enter the GL company code to which the new company is to be attached.

Press Enter to display the Copy Company Data Selection window.

### Copy Company Data Selection Window

To display this window, Press Enter on the Dependent Companies pop-up.

Use this window to select the data you want to copy from the original company to the new one.

### <u>Fields</u>

### Bank Accounts/Addresses

Check this to copy the <u>bank accounts</u> and addresses from the source company to the target company.

### **Payment Methods**

Check this to copy payment methods to the target company.

### **Parameters**

Check this to copy <u>parameters</u> to the target company.

### **Extended Terms**

Check this to copy extended terms to the target company.

### Bank Interest/Commission

Check this to copy interest and commission definitions to the target company.

#### **External Bank Accounts**

Check this to copy external bank account details to the target company.

### **Transaction Definitions**

Check this to copy ABR transaction types to the target company.

This entry is relevant only if you use the Automatic Bank Reconciliation (ABR) facilities of Cash Management. When the data is loaded, each statement line (<u>transaction</u>) has a code attached. The application uses the <u>transaction types</u> set up via the ABR tasks to identify the different types of statement <u>transaction</u>.

### **Cash Apportionment**

Check this to copy <u>cash apportionment</u> definitions to the target company.

#### **Discount Codes**

Check this to copy discount codes to the target company.

Select Confirm (F8) to create the new company.

## Delete Company [2/CSU]

This task enables you to delete one or more companies.

**Caution:** Great care is needed in running this task. Before you run it, as well as creating a security copy of the files library, you may want to archive the data you intend to delete.

### **Delete Company Window**

To display this window, select the Delete Company task.

Use this window to select the company or companies you want to delete.

### **Option**

#### Delete

Select this option for each company you want to delete. Only those companies with the select field beside them are available for deletion.

When you have selected the companies you want to delete, Press Enter. Select Confirm (F11) to confirm the deletion of the selected companies, or OK to exit or re-select companies.

## Maintain Company [3/CSU]

This task enables you to maintain a single company or a group of companies under a template company by copying data from one company to another.

### Maintain Existing Company Window

To display this window, select the Maintain Company task.

Use this window to specify the source and target companies.

### **Fields**

### From Company

Enter the company to provide the source details.

### **To Company**

Enter the company to which the source details are to be copied.

Press Enter to display the Maintain Company Data Selection window.

### Maintain Company Data Selection Window

To display this window, Press Enter on the Maintain Existing Company window.

Use this window to specify the data to be copied.

### **Fields**

### **Bank Accounts/Addresses**

Check this to copy the <u>bank accounts</u> and addresses from the source company to the target company.

### **Payment Methods**

Check this to copy <u>payment methods</u> to the target company.

#### **Parameters**

Check this to copy <u>parameters</u> to the target company.

### **Extended Terms**

Check this to copy extended terms to the target company.

### **Bank Interest/Commission**

Check this to copy interest and commission definitions to the target company.

### **External Bank Accounts**

Check this to copy external bank account details to the target company.

### **Transaction Definitions**

Check this to copy ABR transaction types to the target company.

This entry is relevant only if you use the Automatic Bank Reconciliation (ABR) facilities of Cash Management. When the data is loaded, each statement line (<u>transaction</u>) has a code attached. The application uses the <u>transaction types</u> set up via the ABR tasks to identify the different types of statement <u>transaction</u>.

### **Cash Apportionment**

Check this to copy <u>cash apportionment</u> definitions to the target company.

### **Discount Codes**

Check this to copy discount codes to the target company.

Make your selections and select Confirm (F8) to update.

## Reconcile Balances to Transactions [11/CSU]

This task verifies the balances on <u>bank accounts</u> by building balances from <u>transactions</u> held on the <u>transaction</u> file.

### Reconcile Balances Selection Window

To display this window, select the Reconcile Balances to <u>Transactions</u> task.

Use this window to specify the company whose balances you want to re-calculate.

### **Fields**

### **Company Code**

Enter the code of the company whose bank balances you want to re-calculate.

Press Enter to display the Reconcile Balances Bank Selection window.

### Reconcile Balances Bank Selection Window

To display this window, enter a company and then Press Enter on the Reconcile Balances Selection window.

### **Fields**

### **Bank Account**

Enter the <u>bank account</u> to reconcile/rebuild a specific <u>bank account</u>. If this field is left blank, all <u>bank accounts</u> will be reconciled/rebuilt.

You can use the prompt facility on this field to select from the Select Bank Account pop-up.

Press Enter to display the Balance Reconciliation window.

### **Balance Reconciliation Window**

To display this window, Press Enter on the Reconcile Balances Bank Selection window.

Use this window to confirm details and submit the job.

### **Fields**

### **Bank Account**

This field displays the <u>bank account</u> if one has been selected on the Reconcile Balances Bank Selection window. Otherwise, this field is not displayed and the text "All <u>bank accounts</u>" is displayed instead.

### Do You Wish to Update the File?

Use this checkbox as follows:

Checked - If there is a discrepancy found during the reconciliation and you want to replace the current bank balance with the re-calculated value

Unchecked - To retain the current value

Press Enter to submit a batch job to carry out the reconciliation. A report will be produced detailing any discrepancies found.

## Reconcile to General Ledger [12/CSU]

This task compares the values held on the bank and General <u>Ledger</u> records and reports any discrepancies.

**Note:** If archiving has taken place, the archived To <u>period</u> will be referenced and only allow reconciliation for <u>periods</u> greater than the archived <u>period</u>.

# Reconcile Cash Management to General Ledger Company Window

To display this window, select the Reconcile to General Ledger task.

Use this window to enter the company code to be reconciled.

### **Fields**

### Company

Enter the company code required.

Press Enter to display the Reconcile to General <u>Ledger</u> Window.

## Reconcile Cash Management to General Ledger Window

To display this window, enter the company to be reconciled, and Press Enter on the Reconcile Cash Management to General <u>Ledger</u> window.

Use this window to specify the periods and sessions to be reconciled.

### **Fields**

### From Period/To Period

Enter the start and end <u>periods</u> for which the reconciliation is required. The <u>default</u> is to use the current <u>period</u> only.

### From Session/To Session

Enter the start and end Cash Management <u>session</u> numbers for which the reconciliation is required.

Select Print Report (F8) to submit a batch job to carry out the reconciliation procedure. A report will be produced detailing any discrepancies found.

## BSP - Recovery [13/CSU]

This task should be used if you lose communication with your computer while entering postings via the Bank Statement Postings task.

The data you have entered up to the last time you selected **OK** will be recovered, and the statement itself will have its status set to Suspended, so that entries can continue to be made.

This procedure does not recover data that has been sent as postings in the batch job.

### Recover Interactive Bank Statement Posting Window

To display this window, select the BSP - Recovery task.

Use this window to enter the bank account and statement reference to be recovered.

### <u>Fields</u>

### **Bank Account**

Enter the bank account number.

Alternatively, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Select <u>Bank Account</u> pop-up.

#### Statement Reference

Enter the statement reference for the failed session.

Alternatively, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Select Statement pop-up.

When you have entered a valid <u>bank account</u> and statement reference, Press Enter and then select **Confirm (F8)** to update the <u>session</u>.

## AR Interface Posting Recovery [14/CSU]

This task should be run if the interactive job AR Interface Posting fails. It enables you to change the status of the <u>session</u> so that you can re-enter that <u>session</u> and complete the job normally. Simply enter the account and interface posting reference on the entry window to re-start the process.

## AR Interface Posting Recovery Window

To display this window, select the AR Interface Posting Recovery task.

Use this window to specify the statement to be recovered.

### **Fields**

### **Bank Account**

Enter the bank account of the statement to be recovered.

Alternatively, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Select <u>Bank Account</u> pop-up.

### Lock Box Reference

Enter the reference of the statement to be recovered.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select AR Interface Reference pop-up.

When you Press Enter, **Confirm (F8)** will appear at the bottom of the window. Select **Confirm (F8)**. A message will tell you when the statement has been recovered.

## Re-print Cheques [31/CSU]

This task is provided to enable you to replace cheques that have been lost or damaged.

Note: This task can be run only if cheque numbers have not yet been allocated to the payments.

### Re-print Cheques Company Selection Window

To display this window, select the Re-print Cheques task.

Use this window to select the company code.

### **Fields**

### **Company Code**

Enter the company code for which you wish to re-print the cheques.

Enter a company code and Press Enter to display the Re-print Cheques Selection window.

### Re-print Cheques Selection Window

To display this window, enter the company for which cheques are to be re-printed on the Re-print Cheques Company Selection window and then Press Enter.

Use this window to specify whether you are re-printing Accounts Payable cheques or Cash Management cheques.

### **Fields**

### Option

Select one of the following:

Accounts Payable Payments (1) - To re-print cheques that originated in Accounts Payable Other Cash Payments (2) - To re-print cheques that originated in Cash Management

Press Enter.

If you selected the Accounts Payable option, the Re-print Cheques AP Company Selection window is displayed.

If you selected the Cash Management option, the Re-print Cheques <u>Bank Account</u> window is displayed.

## Re-print Cheques AP Company Selection Window

To display this window, select the Accounts Payable option on the Re-print Cheques Selection window and then Press Enter.

Use this window to select the Accounts Payable company.

### **Options**

#### Select

Use this to select an Accounts Payable company.

Select an Accounts Payable company and Press Enter to display the Re-print Cheques <u>Bank</u> <u>Account</u> window.

### Re-print Cheques Bank Account Window

To display this window, select the Cash Management option on the Re-print Cheques Selection window and then Press Enter or select an Accounts Payable company and Press Enter on the Reprint Cheques AP Company Selection window.

Use this window to specify the <u>bank account</u> for which you wish to re-print Accounts Payable cheques or Cash Management cheques.

### **Fields**

### **Enter Bank Account Number**

Enter the bank account number for which you wish to re-print cheques.

If the <u>prompt</u> facility is available, you can select from the Select <u>Bank Account</u> pop-up.

Press Enter to display the Re-print Cheques Detail window.

### Re-print Cheques Detail Window

To display this window, enter the <u>bank account</u> for which you want to re-print cheques and Press Enter on the Re-print Cheques <u>Bank Account</u> window.

Use this window to select cheques for re-printing. If no cheques are eligible for re-printing, a message to that effect will be displayed.

### **Fields**

### Rep

Check this box on the payment lines for which re-printing is required.

### **Functions**

### Select All (F17)

Use this to select all displayed cheques for re-printing.

### **Discard Selection (F19)**

Use this to clear all checked payment lines.

When you are ready to submit a job to re-print, select Accept Selection (F8).

## Initialise Bank Balances [32/CSU]

If Cash Management is being installed into a live environment, the General <u>Ledger</u> accounts defined as <u>bank accounts</u> to Cash Management may already have a balance.

This balance is posted to the Cash Management balance record using this task. No postings are made to the General <u>Ledger</u>, so the Cash Management balance is brought into line.

**Note:** This task should be used only when installing Cash Management onto a system where the General <u>Ledger</u> balance already exists.

### Enter Bank Account Balances Account Selection Window

To display this window, select the Initialise Bank Balances task and enter the company for which balances are to be posted, then Press Enter.

Use this window to specify the bank account for which the balance is to be posted.

### **Fields**

### **Bank Acct Code**

Enter the bank account for which balance is to be posted.

Leave this blank to display the Select Bank Account pop-up.

Enter or select a <u>bank account</u> and Press Enter to display the <u>Bank Account</u> Balances window, asking for the balance details.

### Enter Bank Account Balances Window

To display this window, enter or select a <u>bank account</u> and Press Enter on the Enter <u>Bank Account</u> Balances Account Selection window.

Use this window to display and add balances for the selected bank account.

### **Fields**

### General Ledger Value

This field holds the account balance in <u>base currency</u>. This value will not be posted to the General <u>Ledger</u>, but held as a Cash Management <u>transaction</u> for the <u>item</u> enquiry.

### Cash Mgmt Value

This value must be entered in the currency of the bank account selected.

Press Enter to return to the Enter <u>Bank Account</u> Balances Account Selection window and enter the next account for which a balance has to be set up. When all balances are initialised, select **Update Balances (F8)** to perform the update.

## Sundry Creditor Name Scan Rebuild [33/CSU]

This task enables you to re-construct and thereby update the index used on the Sundry creditors name scan facilities.

### Rebuild Misc. Creditor Name Scan Indexes Window

To display this window, select the Sundry Creditor Name Scan Rebuild task.

Use this window to specify the required company.

### **Fields**

### Company

Enter the company code required.

Press Enter to submit a job to rebuild the name scan index.

## Recalculate Discount [34/CSU]

This task re-calculates the discount value and date for all open items which have a discount code.

The task submits a batch job to carry out the re-calculation, and produces two reports.

- An audit report prints the documents whose discount date or value have been changed with previous and new discount dates and values.
- An exception report prints the details of any document which was unsuccessfully processed.

### Recalculation of Available Discount Window

To display this window, select the Recalculate Discount task.

Use this window to specify the modules to be re-calculated.

### **Fields**

You can re-calculate for both Accounts Payable and Accounts Receivable by checking both fields.

### **Accounts Payable**

Use this checkbox as follows:

Checked - To re-calculate the discount details for all the open items within Accounts Payable

Unchecked - Not to re-calculate the discount details for all the <u>open items</u> within Accounts Payable

### **Accounts Receivable**

Use this checkbox as follows:

Checked - To re-calculate the discount details for all the open items within Accounts Receivable

Unchecked - Not to re-calculate the discount details for all the <u>open items</u> within Accounts Receivable

Select the applications required, and select **Confirm (F8)** to submit the batch job which performs the calculations.

## Rebuild Cash Allocation Data Queue [35/CSU]

When a <u>session</u> is confirmed, it is written to a data queue that holds all unprocessed <u>sessions</u>. These <u>sessions</u> are then processed as a batch job. If for any reason the data queue were to become corrupted, the task to rebuild it will cause all unprocessed <u>transactions</u> to be checked, and all <u>sessions</u> with unprocessed <u>transactions</u> to be added to the data queue, where processing will then continue as normal.

**Note:** The process will not cause a <u>transaction</u> to be processed twice. If a <u>session</u> holds both a processed and an unprocessed <u>transaction</u>, only the latter will be processed.

The task requires no parameters to be specified, so no window will be displayed.

## Delete Redundant Data [36/CSU]

This task enables you to delete redundant data in order to free storage space on the system. You can also choose to archive (save) it to an off-line medium from which it may be restored, as required, for enquiries and reports.

If you choose to do this, redundant data is archived for selected data types up to a select <u>period</u> end. You may also choose to delete statement and audit details up to a selected cut-off date.

An audit record will be deleted if it is written on or before the cut-off date specified.

**Caution:** Before running this procedure, you are strongly advised to make a security copy of the files library.

The work library, however, must be specified. This should be the name of a general purpose library which the delete/archive procedure can use to store certain files while the procedure is going on. This will commonly be a new library created for the task and which will be deleted when the task is completed.

### **Libraries Selection Window**

To display this window, select the Delete Redundant Data task.

Use this window to specify where to look for the delete and archive programs and to name the files to be used when it performs the delete or archive procedure. The <u>default</u> values of \*LIBL should suit any normal delete and archive procedure, and changing these should rarely be necessary.

Press Enter to display the Delete Redundant Data Files Selection window.

### Delete Redundant Data Files Selection Window

To display this window, Press Enter on the Libraries Selection window.

Use this window to specify the type of data you want to delete.

### <u>Fields</u>

### **Company Number**

Enter the company that you want to archive and purge.

### **Transactions**

Use this checkbox as follows:

Checked - To delete closed transaction items up to and including the cut-off period entered

Unchecked - To omit closed <u>transaction</u> details from the archive run

### **Collection Documents**

Use this checkbox as follows:

Checked - To delete closed collection documents up to and including the cut-off period entered

Unchecked - To omit closed collection documents from the archive run

### **Period Balances**

Use this checkbox as follows:

Checked - To delete period balances up to and including the cut-off period entered

Unchecked - To omit period balances from the archive run

### Enter a Cut-off Period for the Above

Enter the latest <u>period</u> to include archived <u>items</u>. The selection of <u>transactions/collection</u> <u>documents/period</u> balances will be deleted from the <u>ledgers</u>. The <u>period</u> entered must be before the current <u>period</u> and after the last archived <u>period</u>. The Archived To <u>period</u> is recorded and validation allows archiving to be run again up to that <u>period</u> but will not allow the entry of a prior <u>period</u>.

**Note:** The archiving creates three <u>transactions</u> (XR, XP and XC): these represent the total value of the <u>items</u> archived (receipts, payments and charges).

**Note:** When balances are rebuilt: Only balances greater than the Archived To <u>period</u> are rebuilt; all other balance records are left untouched.

**Note:** The cumulative bank balance (which has a zero <u>period</u> number on CSP12) is built using these <u>transaction types</u> and all other <u>transactions</u> (CSP20s).

### Statement Details

Use this checkbox as follows:

Checked - To delete statement details up to and including the cut-off date entered

Unchecked - To omit statement details from the archive run

### **Company Profile Audit**

Use this checkbox as follows:

Checked - To delete company profile audit records up to and including the cut-off date entered

Unchecked - To retain company profile audit records up to the cut-off date entered

### **Bank Details Audit**

Use this checkbox as follows:

Checked - To delete audited bank details up to and including the cut-off date entered

Unchecked - To retain audited bank details up to and including the cut-off date entered

### Enter a Cut-off Date for the Above

Enter the cut-off date for the deletion of audit files. Audit records as selected are deleted prior to and including this date.

Once you have entered the archive criteria, Press Enter. The entries are then validated. Select **Proceed with Deletions (F8)** to proceed with the purge. The Delete Redundant Data Submission window is displayed.

### Delete Redundant Data Submission Window

To display this window, enter the archive criteria and Press Enter then select Proceed with Deletions (F8) on the Delete Redundant Data Files Selection window to proceed with the purge.

This window confirms that the job has been submitted, and includes the name of the library that is created as a result of archiving the purged data. Make a note of this library name.

This task generates library names for 1,000 runs. If you exceed this number, a further window is displayed on which you enter the library name in which the archived data is stored.

After the purge has completed, the library quoted on the final window of the purge can be saved onto magnetic media and deleted from your computer. Should you need to enquire or report on this library, it can be restored and the <u>historical data</u> tasks can be used to interrogate it.

Press Enter to leave the task.

# Reorganise Files [37/CSU]

When data is deleted from an application using the maintenance tasks, the data is marked for deletion in the file, but is not actually deleted from the system. The Reorganise Files task removes such marked records from the files, freeing valuable storage space.

Files in other applications also need re-organising from time to time. It is therefore good practice to re-organise files on a regular basis, possibly using the Auto Day end task in Machine Manager.

The work library must be specified. This should be the name of a general purpose library which the task can use to store certain files while the job is active. This will commonly be a new library created for the task, which will be deleted when the task is completed.

# Reorganise Physical Files Window

To display this window, select the Reorganise Files task.

Use this window to specify where the program should look for the programs and files when it performs the procedure.

Press Enter, and the next window requests confirmation of your decision to re-organise your files. Select **Proceed with Re-organization (F8)** to confirm, or select **Exit (F3)** to leave the task.

# Historical Reporting [7/CS]

The Cash Management application provides facilities to archive data no longer needed for operational use. This involves saving the data so that it can be stored off the machine, releasing space for new data. The Delete Redundant Data section describes how this is done.

Data saved in this way is called <u>historical data</u>, and each time data is archived, a single new library is created to hold the <u>historical data</u>.

# Report on Archived Transactions Window

To display this window, select the Historical Data task.

Use this window to select the library you want to use.

## **Fields**

# Purge of abcdef

This field indicates which type of purge has been undertaken in the archive library. 1 will be displayed under one or more of the columns.

- a Transactions
- b Collection documents
- c Period balances
- d Statement details
- e Company profile audit
- f Bank details audit

## **Options**

### Select

Use this to select the required archive library.

**Note:** If the archive library selected does not exist on the machine, an explanatory message is displayed. In this case, contact your systems department to have the library restored to the application.

Select the required library to display the Report on Archived Company <u>Transactions</u> for Company window.

# Report on Archived Company Transactions Window

To display this window, select the required archive library on the Report on Archived <u>Transactions</u> window.

Use this window to select the ranges you want to see printed on the report.

## **Fields**

## **Bank Account From/To**

Enter the range of bank accounts required.

## **CM Reference From/To**

Enter the range of Cash Management references required.

## Bank Reference From/To

Enter the range of bank references required.

## Statement Reference From/To

Enter the range of statement references required.

## Period From/To

Enter the range of periods required.

## Posting Date From/To

Enter or select the range of posting dates required.

**Note:** For each of the above, to select all values, leave both the From and To fields blank. Enter the From value and leave the To value blank to print a range from the value to the end. Leave the From value blank and enter the To value to print a range from the beginning to the To value.

# Order (1-5)

You can select one of the following against each field to indicate the way in which the report should be ordered:

\* None \*

1

2

3

4

5

# Ascending/Descending

For the selected ordering fields, you can select one of the following:

Ascending

Descending

Press Enter to submit a job to print the report.

# Chapter 11 Application Interface

# Set Up Requirements for EDI Financials

To use the EDI Financial options effectively it is recommended that you set up the following:

# In Cash Management

Parameters File

Add your **EDI** payment classes to parameter type PCLS.

• Parameters File

Add your EDI payment methods to parameter type EBDR.

• Payment Methods Maintenance

To send payment details to your bank via <u>EDI</u> add your <u>EDI Payment Methods</u>. These must be of payment type <u>EDI</u> (7). Only one electronic <u>payment method</u> can be defined for a bank.

## In Accounts Payable

Supplier Maintenance

<u>Payment Method</u> should be set to an <u>EDI payment method</u> (Payment Type <u>EDI</u> (7)) if payment advice is to be made via <u>EDI</u>.

Supplier Maintenance

On the Bank Details pop-up, ensure that suppliers who are to receive cheques separately from remittances are defined as Cheque Type I for separate cheque and remittance.

## In EDI Maintenance

Maintain Documents

Ensure that document type Payment Order/Remittance Advice is defined.

Maintain Documents

Ensure that document type <u>Lockbox</u> is defined.

Maintain <u>Trading Partners</u>

Set Payment Order/Remittance Advice to Active for those of your suppliers who are to receive Payments Remittance advices via EDI.

Maintain Trading Partners

Set <u>Lockboxes</u> to Active to receive payment advice notes (customers' payments) from your bank.

Maintain <u>Trading Partners</u>

Define the bank to <u>EDI</u> by defining your Cash Management Company and your Cash Management <u>Bank Account</u> as Internal <u>Trading Partners</u>. Define the bank as a <u>trading partner</u> in the <u>EDI</u> Enabler. Do not define the Bank as a <u>trading partner</u> in System21 <u>EDI</u>.

# Receive Payment Advice/Remittance [1/CSAI]

This task allows your customers to let you know, electronically, that they have instructed their bank to make payment. Payment advice notes or remittances (type ANSI 820) will be received from your customers. This task will validate payment advices and produce a <u>control listing</u>.

Optionally, advice notes/remittances in error may be listed in an exception report.

**Note:** For more information, see the Set Up Requirements for <u>EDI</u> Financials section.

# Receive Payment Advice/Remittances via EDI Window

To display this window, select the Receive Payment Advice/Remittance task.

Use this window to control the receipt of transactions.

## **Fields**

## **Control List Inclusion**

Select one of the following:

All (1) - To produce a listing of all payment advice and remittances received since the last batch was processed.

Exceptions only (2) - To select and list payments and remittances received that are in error (cannot be matched).

Select **Update** (F8) to process the batch job and produce a listing.

# Receive Lockbox [2/CSAI]

<u>Lockbox</u> offers you electronic notification from your bank that a customer's payment has been made into your account. This task will validate <u>Lockbox</u> payment advices/remittances (type ANSI 823) and produce a <u>control listing</u>.

**Note:** A bank in this sense is a financial institution or lockbox service provider.

Optionally, unmatched or advice notes in error may be listed in an exception report.

Note: For more information, see the Set Up Requirements for EDI Financials section.

**Note:** The existing Cash Management <u>lockbox</u> task, AR Interface Posting, is unchanged and may, if required, continue to be used as a non-<u>EDI</u> <u>lockbox</u> function.

# Receive Lockboxes via EDI Window

To display this window, select the Receive Lockbox task.

Use this window to control the transactions you receive.

## **Fields**

### **Control List Inclusion**

Enter one of the following:

All (1) - To receive all lockbox payment advice and remittances

Exceptions only (2) - To receive only those <u>lockbox</u> payments and remittances which are unmatched or in error

Select **Update** (F8) to process the batch job and produce a listing.

# Send Payment Advice/Remittance [11/CSAI]

This task is used to inform your suppliers, electronically, as follows:

- As an instruction to your bank to make a payment
- As a payment advice (which may include remittance details) to your supplier

**Note:** In order for this to happen, the supplier's <u>payment method</u> should be a non-<u>EDI</u> (<u>payment method</u> type 1-6) and Payment Advice/Remittance should be active (via the <u>Trading Partner</u> Maintenance task).

Both of the above, that is, instruct your bank and inform your supplier

This task will validate payment advice notes or remittances (type ANSI 820) and produce reports for the supplier and bank account.

Optionally, advice notes/remittances in error may be listed in an exception report.

**Note:** Payments made to suppliers set up with a <u>payment method</u> of payment type <u>EDI</u> (7) will be selected.

**Note:** If <u>EDI</u> remittances are active for the supplier selected, the <u>bank account</u> from which the payments are made should have separate cheque and remittance stationery, otherwise the remittance information will continue to be sent in hard copy format and not electronically as expected. (Stationery type is added via Supplier Bank Details.)

**Warning**: If in this instance separate cheque/remittance stationery is not used, <u>EDI</u> transmission will be ignored and processing will continue as if no <u>EDI</u> were attached.

Note: For more information, see the Set Up Requirements for EDI Financials section.

# Send Payment Advice/Remittances via EDI Window

To display this window, select the Send Payment Advice/Remittance task.

Use this window to specify what to include in the remittance.

## **Fields**

# Add Payment Advice Directly into Mailbox

Use this checkbox as follows:

Unchecked - To exclude detailed payment advice/remittances in the Mailbox queue

Checked - To include detailed information of payment advice/remittances in the Mailbox queue

This option only functions when PREMENOS is attached.

**Note:** When PREMENOS is attached, this option causes the generated message data to be stored in the <u>application interface</u> files ready for either:

Note: Manually controlled transmission

Note: Automatic transmission (when this field is checked).

## **Print EDI Payment Advice Remittance Control**

Use this checkbox as follows:

Unchecked - If you do not want to produce a report

Checked - If you want to produce a report, listing detail lines of <u>EDI</u> payment advices and remittances to be sent

Select **Update** (F8) to process the batch job and produce the listing, if required.

# **Chapter 12 Audit Control**

This section contains details of the various audit reports available within Cash Management.

# Report on Daily Movements [1/CSA]

Use this task to produce a report listing all <u>transactions</u> for each bank, with opening and closing balances. It can be used to verify the company's <u>bank account</u> balances.

# Daily Movements Window

To display this window, select the Report on Daily Movements task.

Use this window to specify the details you want printed.

## <u>Fields</u>

#### Bank Code

This is the bank in which accounts are held, not the <u>Bank Account</u>. It <u>defaults</u> to \*ALL but you can enter a value to limit the report to a single bank.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Bank Code pop-up.

## Period From/To

Any <u>periods</u> entered must fall within the <u>period</u> calendar, if the calendar is set up. The fields <u>default</u> to the current <u>period</u>.

## Date From/To

You can optionally enter or select dates within the <u>period</u> range, to limit the extent of the report still further.

## Bank A/C Types

All <u>bank account</u> types set up on the <u>parameter</u> file are here displayed as <u>default</u> types. You can use **Page Down** to see any not on display, and you can delete any which are not required.

Press Enter to validate your entries and then select Print Report (F8) to submit a job to produce the report.

# Audit Report [2/CSA]

Use this task to produce a report listing cash <u>transactions</u> in reference sequence. It provides an <u>audit trail</u> of all <u>transactions</u> entered into Cash Management.

# Cash Management Audit Window

To display this window, select the Audit Report task.

Use this window to specify the details you want printed.

## **Fields**

## Reference/Session From/To

Enter a value in the first field only to print the report just for this reference. Enter a value in the second field to print all <u>items</u> up to this number. Leave both fields blank if <u>transactions</u> within a <u>period</u> range are required.

## Period From/To

Enter start and end <u>periods</u> if you want to limit the report to <u>transactions</u> within the specified <u>period</u> range.

# Type of Report

Select one of the following types:

Cash Book (CB)

General Ledger (GL)

Accts. Payable (AP)

Accts. Receiv (AR)

Select Print Report (F8) to submit a job to produce the report.

# Report on Suspended Items [3/CSA]

Use this task to produce a report which lists, by <u>bank account</u>, all suspended and provisional cash <u>transactions</u>. It is used to control such <u>transactions</u>, and as a checklist for posting suspended <u>transactions</u> and for confirming provisional cash.

# Suspended Items Window

To display this window, select the Report on Suspended <u>Items</u> task.

Use this window to specify the details you want printed.

## **Fields**

### **Bank Account**

Enter a General <u>Ledger bank account</u> to limit the report to a single account. You can enter \*ALL to print all accounts.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Bank Account pop-up.

#### Date

Enter or select a date to list all <u>transactions</u> where the <u>transaction</u> date is less than or equal to this date. It <u>defaults</u> to today's date.

Press Enter to validate your entries and then select Print Report (F8) to submit a job to produce the report.

# Report on Unpresented Items [4/CSA]

Use this task to produce a report listing any bank <u>transactions</u> that have not been cleared by the bank reconciliation procedure. It may be used to help in reconciling your bank accounts.

# Print Unpresented Items Window

To display this window, select the Report on Unpresented Items task.

Use this window to specify the details you want printed.

## **Fields**

## **Bank Account**

Enter a General <u>Ledger bank account</u> to limit the report to a single account. You can enter \*ALL to print all accounts.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Bank Account pop-up.

## **Print Details**

Use this checkbox as follows:

Checked - To print item details on the report

Unchecked - Not to print item details on the report

## **Print Details Separately**

Use this checkbox as follows:

Checked - To print suspended details separately on the report

Unchecked - To print suspended details in with the un-presented items on the report

## Period From/To

Enter start and end periods only if you want to limit the report to selected periods.

Press Enter to validate your entries and then select Print Report (F8) to submit a job to produce the report.

# Print Bank Statements [5/CSA]

Use this task to produce a report listing selected bank statements, with the <u>transactions</u> cleared on each statement. It is used in the control of the company's Cash Management against the bank's records.

# **Print Bank Statements Window**

To display this window, select the Print Bank Statements task.

Use this window to specify the details you want printed.

## **Fields**

## **Bank Account**

Enter a General <u>Ledger bank account</u> to limit the report to a single account. You can enter \*ALL to print all accounts.

Alternatively, use the <u>prompt</u> facility to select from the Select <u>Bank Account</u> pop-up.

## From/To Statement Number

If a single account is requested, a range of statement numbers may be entered.

Otherwise, whether for one account or all accounts, in the From field, enter either \*ALL to print every statement which has been processed, or \*LATEST to print the latest statement.

## \*All/\*Unmatched

Enter \*ALL to print all items which appear on the selected bank statements.

Enter \*UNMATCHED to print only unmatched items.

Press Enter to validate your entries and then select **Print Report (F8)** to submit a job to produce the report.

# Report on External Interface Transmissions [6/CSA]

You may use this task to select a summary or detailed report of <u>lockbox</u> transmissions created at the automatic cash posting task (Process External Data).

- The summary report includes bank name and Account/<u>Lockbox</u> account reference, transmission number, creation and deposit dates, the number of receipts and remittances, the total amount and the status of transmission.
- In addition, the detailed report will include the receipt and remittance details.

You can select on a range of bank accounts and cash deposit dates.

# **External Interface Transmissions Window**

To display this window, select the Report on External Interface Transmissions task.

Use this window to specify the details you want printed.

## **Fields**

## Bank Acct Code (From/To)

Enter the range of bank accounts to be reported on.

You can enter the same code in both fields to report on one account.

Leave both fields blank to report on all possible bank accounts.

You can enter the From or the To entry only, to report from or to the beginning or end of the range.

You may use the prompt facility to select from the Select Bank Account pop-up.

## Deposit Date (From/To)

Enter or select a range of dates, to include cash deposited up to and including the last date entered.

You can enter or select the same date in both fields to report on one day's deposits.

# Detailed report?

Use this checkbox as follows:

Checked - to print a detailed report

Unchecked - to print a summary report

Press Enter to validate your entries and then select Print Report (F8) to produce the report.

# Report on Unmatched Bank Details [7/CSA]

Use this task to produce a report of <u>lockbox</u> transmissions which have been received but failed to be assigned to invoices/customers.

The report includes the unassigned cash <u>bank account</u> and transmission reference, bank name, receipt deposit date, receipt <u>bank reference</u> and bank value (with prime value and currency) and receipt bank details. A total will be calculated for each <u>lockbox</u> number included in the report.

# **Unmatched Bank Details Window**

To display this window, select the Report on Unmatched Bank Details task.

Use this window to specify the details you want printed.

## **Fields**

### **Bank Account Code**

Enter a GL bank account to report unmatched transmissions.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select Bank Account pop-up.

### **External Interface Transmission**

You can optionally enter a transmission reference.

A range of transmissions may be selected by leaving this field blank and entering a range of deposit dates in the next fields.

Alternatively, use the prompt facility to select from the Select AR Interface Reference pop-up.

# Deposit Date From/To

If the External Interface Transmission field is blank, you may either enter or select a range of deposit dates to include cash deposited up to and including the last date entered, or enter or select the same date in both fields to report on one day's deposits.

Press Enter to validate your entries and then select **Print Report (F8)** to produce the report.

# Appendix A Glossary

### **Account Code**

This is the unique code given to every account, consisting of one to four levels of a maximum twelve characters, as defined by the account's ledger, and used for all fiscal transactions.

It is the term given to the first twelve characters of the account and the last thirty characters of the extension code together.

# **Accounts Receivable Interface Postings**

If your bank sends you details of your Accounts Receivable receipts on magnetic tape or electronically, the Interface Posting facility will automatically post and allocate.

# **Application Interface**

This is a System21 Application which extracts documents to be sent to a Trading Partner via EDI and adds them into EDI/400 for translation and transmission.

Conversely, it updates System21 with information from documents received via EDI/400.

### **ANSI X12**

This is a message standard developed by the American National Standards Institute. It is widely used in the United States.

# **Application Reference Data**

This is the basic data set up by the user without which the application cannot function - payment methods, for example, or extended terms.

#### **Audit Trail**

It is vital that a complete record of all data entries and amendments be kept in order to comply with accounting regulations and to provide a means of tracking the provenance of any errors.

# **BACS**

Banks' Automatic Clearing System, a procedure whereby payments may be made to suppliers electronically through the banks' computer systems

## **Bank Account**

An account on your chart of accounts which has been defined as a bank account to which transactions will be posted

### **Bank Reference**

When a bank receives a session of collection documents, it sends an acknowledgement back, listing the documents received. The bank reference is the reference number on this acknowledgement.

## **Base Currency**

If your company uses more than one currency, a base currency must be specified for it. This is the currency into which any non-base (prime) currency will be converted for the purposes of enquiry, reporting and accounting. Once postings have been made to the company, the base currency cannot be changed, so it must be decided with care.

## **Batch Control**

The company profile can be set up to allow transactions to be posted in batches for control purposes. Accumulated batch values are then validated against a given batch total. Unlike Session Control, this function is optional.

## Bill of Exchange

See Collection Document.

## **Cash Apportionment**

If you need to spread cash received by collection document over different bank accounts and in certain proportions, setting up a cash apportionment table within Cash Management enables you to achieve this.

## **Caution Days**

The receipt of cash from a collection document cannot be guaranteed until confirmation, some days after the maturity date. This number of days can be specified on the system as caution days.

### Chase Letter

See Dunning Letter.

## Cheque Sequencing

The system enables you to issue cheques in batches and to keep track of any last or spoiled cheques.

### **Collection Document**

A collection document or bill of exchange is a guaranteed negotiable payment which may be issued to the company by its customers, or by the company to its suppliers as a promissory payment of an outstanding debt. When a collection document is accepted or issued, it is posted to the company's account to reduce the outstanding debt. On maturing, the document is exchanged for cash - as a payment or a receipt.

## **Company Profile**

Cash Management is a multiple company application and a number of parameters for each of its companies must be set up before the application can be run. The company profile contains all the basic rules within which a particular company is to operate.

# **Contra Accounting**

A trading partner may often be both a supplier and a customer. Where this is the case, the contra accounts facility establishes a link between the supplier and customer accounts. This link causes an Accounts Payable payment to be reduced by the amount in the contra account in Accounts Receivable.

#### **Control Account**

A control account holds values posted from all the accounts of a sub-ledger beneath it. Postings cannot be made directly into a control account.

#### **Control List**

A System21 Application Interface report providing details of documents to be sent or received via EDI

# **Country Code**

Depending on where it is used, the country code may either control which options are available to users, or may simply control the format of the bank account window to appear when entering bank details.

## **Currency Code**

If you are running Cash Management in a multi-currency environment, a transaction can be entered in base currency, or in any other currency defined to the system. The three-character currency code refers to the currency to be used, and provides default exchange rates, etc.

## **Currency Rate Code**

For multi-currency Cash Management, you can define default rate codes to be used to convert prime currencies into base.

### **Default**

A default value is a value stored by the system for use when no other value can be found. For example, when setting up extension codes for an account, you have the option to specify default codes which will appear in the extension code window whenever the account is entered.

## **Direct Debit**

Direct debits can be created within Cash Management. The difference between a direct debit and a collection document created automatically is in the way they consolidate payments:

Automatic creation will create either separate documents for each invoice due date, or separate documents for each invoice, depending on a setting in the customer master file.

Direct debit creation creates a debit for all invoices up to the specified due date.

## **Discount Codes**

If you wish to benefit fully from any early settlement discounts offered by a supplier, or if you wish to offer such discounts to a customer, you can define the schedule of settlements to a discount code, which will alert you to available discounts.

### Dissection

The breakdown of a single transaction value across a number of General Ledger accounts or to tax codes

## **Due Date**

The date on which payment of a transaction is due

## **Dunning Letter**

A letter sent to inform a debtor of the status of the account (formerly known as a chase letter)

#### **EDI**

Electronic Data Interchange is a method of transmitting business information over a Network, between Trading Partners who agree to follow approved national or industry standards in translating and exchanging information.

### EDI/400

This is a PREMENOS module which receives standard Documents from a Network, translates them and adds them into the System21 Application Interface database.

Conversely, it translates Documents output from the Application Interface into standard Documents. It then sends the Documents to a private or third party network.

## **Effectivity**

It is often useful to be able to define the validity dates of an entity, so that the system can prevent its use outside of these dates. This period of validity is called an entity's *effectivity*.

## **Exchange Rate**

The number of units of one currency which may be bought or sold for one unit (or, in many cases, 100 units) of another currency

# **Exchange Rate Code**

The code set up to define the exchange rate between two currencies

## **Extended Terms**

If payment of an item is to be spread over a period of time - paying different amounts each month, for example - then the best way to achieve this is to set up an extended terms code within the Cash Management application, and to define the payment terms to the code.

## **External Bank Account**

You can maintain a record of customers' and suppliers' bank account details.

## Flag

A trigger to activate or de-activate certain facilities and parameters within the application

### **Held Document**

Review codes can be set up to prevent a document being sent to bank. A document with such a review code is a held document.

## **Historical Data**

Application data which has been archived (i.e. is no longer considered current data), but which is retained (usually on tape), and may be restored for enquiries and reports

## Inter-company Accounting

When posting transactions to another company, you merely have to specify that company's code and process the transaction in the normal way.

## **Interest and Commission**

The Cash Management application enables you to record the interest and/or commission your bank will be charging you for services.

#### Item

In the Cash Management application, an item is a transaction document which has been entered onto the system.

## Ledger

A ledger is a collection of accounting records made up by double-entry bookkeeping. It is divided into ledger accounts each of which records transactions of a particular type.

## Lockbox

Receive notification from your bank that cash has been paid into your account. Payment advice and remittance information (Tradacoms document type ANSI 823) is processed, validated and received from your bank via EDI

Lockbox (non EDI) operates in the Cash Management module as the AR Interface Posting activity to process valid receipts from your bank on magnetic tape.

### **Mailbox**

This is an area on an EDI network services computer that holds a customer's transactions. It also allows the customer to send to multiple receivers in a single session.

## **Mailbox Queue**

The component of EDI/400 that combines outgoing transactions and receives incoming transactions

## **Mapping**

Shows the relationship between Segments and Elements in a standard document and fields in the System21 Application Interface database

## **Maturity Date**

The date on which a collection document can be cashed at its full face value

### **Miscellaneous Creditor**

A supplier who is not paid through the Accounts Payable application but by a separate payment procedure in either the Cash Management or the General Ledger application

## Multi-company

Cash Management is designed to control more than one independent company or several companies reporting to a controlling or reporting company.

### Multi-currency

Trading in several currencies, linked to a single currency or multi-currency General Ledger

### Open Item

An open or outstanding item is an item which has been authorised but not yet fully paid

# **Outstanding Item**

See Open Item.

### **Parameter**

A characteristic or constant factor defined by you or already in the system, which determines the specific form or specific limitations of a function

## **Payment Class**

All documents of a specified payment class will be included in a session. This means that documents with different payment methods can be included in the same session - different types of collection document, for example.

## **Payment Method**

This is the way in which a supplier is paid, for example, by collection document or by BACS. Payment methods are user-defined within the Cash Management application. A three-character code refers to a definition of payment method, which may be cheque, collection document, by electronic means, etc.

# **Payment Terms**

Payment terms define the way in which the payment due date is calculated for each document on the system. The definitions can be very flexible, incorporating repeated payments using *extended terms* if required.

## Period

These are the units into which a financial year is divided for accounting purposes (usually 12 or 13). These are the same for each financial application linked to the General Ledger.

## Period Close/Open

This is the procedure which completes the processing for the current period. The next period may then be opened.

## **Prime Currency**

The prime or transaction currency is the currency in which a transaction is made, as opposed to the **Base Currency**, into which prime values will be converted

## **Prompt**

This is a facility which brings up a list of records relating to a data entry field. To activate, enter `?' and then press **F4**.

## **Rate Code**

See Exchange Rate Code.

### Reason Code

A code used to define the reason for writing off a document, making a statement posting, etc.

## **Review Code**

This is a two-character, user-defined code which recommends that a collection document be reviewed. Different codes may indicate different reasons for reviewing a document.

Codes can be defined as 'holding' codes, which will prevent a document from being sent to bank.

## Session

Within the collection document module in Cash Management, a session is a series of collection documents grouped together to be sent to the bank.

### **Session Control**

When starting to enter transactions, the system automatically sets up a session number. All transactions entered at once will then be part of that session. The session is the principal method of control in transaction processing, and provides the information required to satisfy audit requirements.

## **Spread Elements**

These are the elements which make up a complete Extended Terms definition.

## **Statement Reconciliation**

The process of matching system transactions with items on your bank statement can be dealt with in two ways by the Cash Management application. Either you can select items for matching manually, or, if you receive your bank statement on a magnetic medium, you can use Automatic Bank Reconciliation to do the reconciliation for you.

## **Supplier Code**

This is the unique identifier assigned to each of the company's suppliers. Each supplier may have multiple delivery addresses.

## **Third Party Document**

This is a document whereby a customer settles a debt by passing on a third party's collection document (mainly used in Italy). See also Collection Documents.

### **Tradacoms**

A message standard developed and supported in the UK by the ANA

## **Trading Partner**

A Customer or Supplier with whom there is an agreement to exchange documents electronically

### **Transaction**

A general term used to describe a unit of financial data submitted to the application - such as an invoice

## **Transaction Currency**

This is the same as Prime Currency.

### **Transaction Matching**

This is a procedure by which you can allocate corresponding debit and credit transactions on an account to one another. Matched transactions are then 'invisible' for enquiries and reports.

## **Transaction Type**

- a) The code defining a posting as a certain type of item e.g. the transaction type **IN** means an invoice
- b) A code maintained within Cash Management, used to match items in automatic bank reconciliation

## **Utilities**

Utilities are procedures for verification, utilisation and management of the application database. They are not required during normal operation, and when used may require technical support.